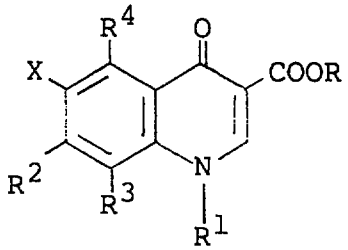
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

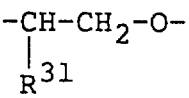
BENZOHETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

The present invention relates to novel antimicrobial benzoheterocyclic compounds of the formula [1]:



[1]

wherein R^1 is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a halogen atom, a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring, a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkanoyloxy or hydroxy, a (lower) alkenyl or thienyl, R^2 is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^3 is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl, or a halogen atom, R^4 is a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom, R is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^1 and R^3 may be taken together to form the group :



This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

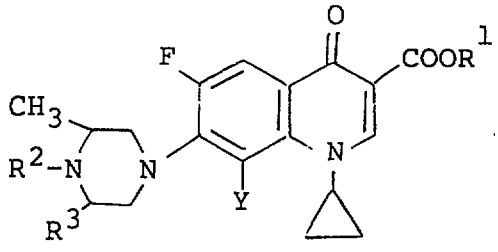
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

wherein R^{31} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and X is a halogen atom, provided that R^3 and R^4 are not simultaneously halogen atom, and that when R^3 is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a lower alkyl, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The benzoheterocyclic compounds of the formula [1] and salts thereof have excellent antibacterial activities against various gram positive and gram negative bacteria, and are useful for the treatment of various infectious diseases induced by various bacteria in human, other animals and fish and are also useful as an external antimicrobial or disinfectant agent for medical instruments or the like.

Prior art

There are many literatures which disclose 4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid derivaties useful as anti-bacterial agents. Among these literatures, European Patent Publication No. 178388 discloses 1-cyclopropyl-7-piperazino-dihydroquinoline carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:



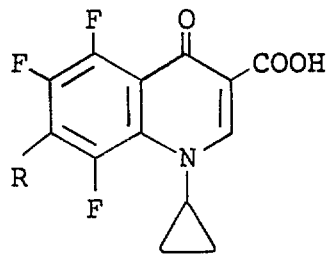
wherein R^1 is H or lower alkyl, R^2 is H, methyl, p-nitro(or amino)-benzyl, R^3 is H, methyl, or aminomethyl, and Y is Cl or F.

Japanese Patent First Publication (Kokai) No.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

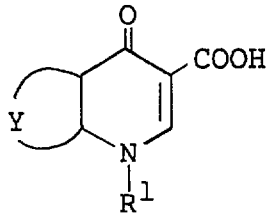
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

469/1987 discloses 1-cyclopropyl-dihydroquinoline carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:



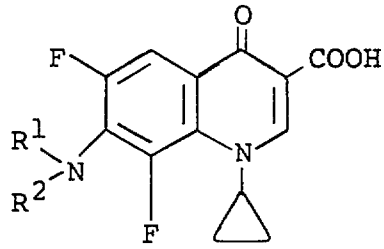
wherein R is substituted or unsubstituted pyrrolidinyl or piperazinyl.

WO 8606630 discloses 1-cycloalkyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:



wherein R^1 is C_3-C_6 cycloalkyl, Y is optionally substituted 6-membered aromatic group.

U.S. Patent 4,556,658 discloses 7-amino-1-cyclopropyl-3-quinoline carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:

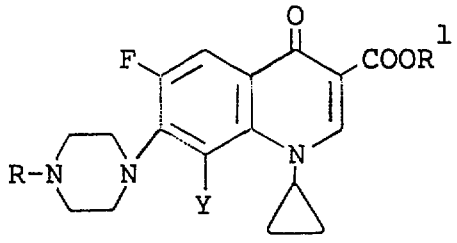


wherein R^1 and R^2 are each substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, or both may combine together with N atom to form a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic ring.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Belgian Patent 899399 discloses 1-cyclopropyl-7-piperazinyl-dihydroquinoline carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:



wherein R is H, methyl, or p-nitro(or amino)-benzyl, R^1 is H or lower alkyl, and Y is Cl, F, methyl.

Similar 1-substituted-7-heterocyclic group-substituted dihydroquinoline carboxylic acid derivatives are also disclosed in other many literatures.

However, these known literatures do not disclose any compound having an alkyl substituent at 5-position.

Brief Description of the Invention

The object of the present invention is to provide novel benzoheterocyclic compounds of the formula [1] and salts thereof which have excellent antimicrobial activity and excellent absorbability. Another object of the invention is to provide a pharmaceutical composition containing as an active ingredient a compound of the formula [1] or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, which is useful for the treatment of various infectious diseases. These and other objects of the invention will be apparent to persons skilled in the art from the following description.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Detailed Description of the Invention

The novel benzoheterocyclic compounds of the present invention have the formula [1] as mentioned above and include pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In the specification, the term "a halogen atom" includes fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom.

The term "a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a halogen atom" includes cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl and a halogen atom, such as cyclopropyl, 2-fluoro-1-cyclopropyl, 2-chloro-1-cyclopropyl, 2-bromo-1-cyclopropyl, 2-iodo-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2-dichloro-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2-dibromo-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2,3-trichloro-1-cyclopropyl, 2-methyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-ethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-propyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-butyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-pentyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-hexyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2-dimethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2,3-dimethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2,3-trimethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-fluoro-3-methyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2-diethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-methyl-3-propyl-1-cyclopropyl, and the like.

The term "a (lower) alkyl" includes straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

The term "a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be substituted"

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

denotes a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; a cycloalkyl; a phenyl (lower) alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a lower alkoxy, nitro or amino; a phenyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom or a (lower) alkyl optionally substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a pyridyl; a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, an amino which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a cycloalkyl or a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, a (lower) alkoxy and a halogen atom; a (lower) alkynyl; a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms; a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl(lower)alkyl; a carboxy(lower)alkyl; an anilinocarbonyl(lower)alkyl; an amino which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a phenyl(lower)alkyl, a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl or a (lower) alkanoyl; hydroxy; a (lower) alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; phthalide; a 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms; a sulfo(lower)alkyl; oxo; a (lower) alkoxy; a (lower) alkenyl; a halogen atom; a

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

(lower) alkanoyloxy; a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl; a cycloalkylamino; a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethylamino which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl; a (lower) alkylthio; or thio,

and includes more specifically 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic rings which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; a C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl; a phenylalkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, nitro or amino and the alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; a phenyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a halogen atom or by a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a pyridyl; an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents selected from the group consiting of hydroxy, a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a straight or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl, a C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl and a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy group and a halogen atom; a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkynyl; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl which may be

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms; a straight chain or branched chain (C_2-C_6)alkenyl-carbonyl substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms or carboxy; a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl; an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl group; a phenylalkoxycarbonyl in which alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy; a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 aminoalkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenylalkoxycarbonyl in which alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy; an alkoxycarbonylalkyl in which alkoxy and alkyl moieties are straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy and alkyl, respectively; a carboxyalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; an anilino-carbonylalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a phenylalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl, or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl; hydroxy; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; phthalide; a 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms; a sulfoalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; oxo; a straight chain

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy; a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkenyl; a halogen atom; a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkanoyloxy; a C_3-C_8 cycloalkylamino; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkylthio; thio; a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6alkyl; and a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethylamino which may be substituted by phenyl or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl , such as, for example, piperazinyl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, homopiperazinyl, morpholino, thiomorpholino, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridyl, imidazolyl, 1,4-diazabicyclo-[4.3.0]nonan-4-yl, thiomorpholino-4-oxide, thiomorpholino-4,4-dioxide, pyrazolidinyl, hexahydropyridazinyl, pyridyl, thiazolidinyl, 2-thio-1-imidazolidinyl, 2-oxo-1-imidazolidinyl, 3,7-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]nonan-3-yl, 4-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-propyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-t-butyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 2,5-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 2,4,5-trimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3,4,5-trimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-ethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-propyl-4-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 2-n-butyl-5-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 2-pentyl-5-hexyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-formyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-propionyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-butyryl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentanoyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexanoyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(α,α,α-trifluoroacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(β,β,β-trifluoro-α,α-difluoropropionyl)-1-

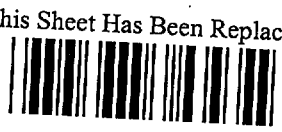
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

piperazinyl, 4-(γ,γ,γ-trifluoro-β,β-difluoro-α,α-difluorobutyryl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(α,α-dichloroacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(α-bromoacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(α-iodoacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(β-fluoropropionyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(β-fluoro-α-fluoropropionyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-fluorohexanoyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-chloropentanoyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-benzyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-phenylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(1-phenylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-phenylpropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-phenylbutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-phenylpentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-phenylhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-methyl-3-phenylpropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-amino-1-piperazinyl, 3-amino-1-piperazinyl, 2-amino-1-piperazinyl, 4-methylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-dimethylamino-1-piperazinyl, 2-ethylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-propylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-t-butylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-pentylamino-1-piperazinyl, 2-hexylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-diethylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-n-butylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(N-methyl-N-pentylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 2-(N-ethyl-N-hexylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-formylamino-1-piperazinyl, 2-propionylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-butyrylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-pentanoylamino-1-piperazinyl, 2-hexanoylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-acetylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(N-ethyl-N-propionylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 4-hydroxy-1-piperazinyl, 3-hydroxy-1-piperazinyl, 2-hydroxy-1-piperazinyl, 4-methylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

propylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-n-butylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-trifluoromethylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-fluoroethylsulfonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-fluoropropylsulfonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4,4,4-trifluorobutylsulfonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-sulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(phthalid-3-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3,4-dibromo-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3,4-dichloro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2(5H)-furanon-5-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-chloro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-formyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetyl-3-ethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetyl-2-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-methyl-3-hydroxymethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-hydroxymethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethyl-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(3-hydroxypropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-methyl-2-(4-hydroxybutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethyl-3-(5-hydroxypentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(6-hydroxyhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-methoxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-ethoxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-propoxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-n-butoxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-pentyloxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hexyloxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-nitrobenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-nitrobenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-aminobenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-aminobenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclopropyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclobutyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclopentyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclohexyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cycloheptyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclooctyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-phenyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-fluorophenyl)-1-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

piperazinyl, 4-(3-bromophenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-chlorophenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-iodophenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-methylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-ethylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-propylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-n-butylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-pentylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hexylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-[3-(2-chloroethyl)phenyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-[2-(3,3-dibromopropyl)phenyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-[4-(4-chlorobutyl)phenyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-hydroxymethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-hydroxypropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-chloropropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(bromomethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-fluoroethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-chlorobutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-fluoropentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2,3-dichlorohexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(trifluoromethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-aminomethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-ethylaminoethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-propylaminobutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-n-butylaminopentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-pentylaminohexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-propylaminomethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-diethylaminoethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(methoxymethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(ethoxymethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-propoxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-butoxypropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-pentyloxybutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-hexyloxypentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-methoxyhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-propargyl-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-butynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-butynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(1-methyl-2-propynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-pentynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hexynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethynyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-vinyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-allyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-butenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-butenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(1-methylallyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-pentenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hexenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 2-oxo-1-piperazinyl, 3-oxo-1-piperazinyl, 4-oxo-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-pyridyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-pyridyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-pyridyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-carbamoyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-dimethylamino-carbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-propylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-butylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexyl-aminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-diethylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-propylaminocarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-methoxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethoxy-carbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-propoxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentyloxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexyloxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-benzyloxy-carbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-phenylethoxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-phenylpropoxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-phenylbutoxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-phenylpentyl-oxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-phenylhexyloxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-aminoacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-amino-propionyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-aminobutyryl)-1-piperazinyl,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

4-(5-aminopentanoyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-aminohexanoyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-benzyloxycarbonylaminoacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-[2-(2-phenylethoxycarbonylamino)acetyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-[2-(3-phenylpropoxycarbonylamino)acetyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-[2-(4-phenylbutoxycarbonylamino)acetyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-methoxycarbonylmethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethoxycarbonylmethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-ethoxycarbonylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-propoxycarbonylpropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-butoxycarbonylbutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-pentyloxycarbonylpentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-hexyloxycarbonylhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-carbonylmethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-carboxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-carboxypropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-carboxybutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-carboxypentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-carboxyhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(anilinocarbonylmethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-anilinocarbonylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-anilinocarbonylpropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-anilinocarbonylbutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-anilinocarbonylpentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-anilinocarbonylhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-carboxyacryloyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-carboxy-2,3-dichloroacryloyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-methyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-ethyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-propyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-n-butyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-pentyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-methoxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-ethoxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-propoxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-n-butoxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-pentyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-acetyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-propionyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

butyryloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-pentanoyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexanoyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-methoxycarbonyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-ethoxycarbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-propoxy-carbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-n-butoxycarbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-pentyloxycarbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexyloxycarbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-benzyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-(2-phenylethyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(1-phenylethyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-phenylbutyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(5-phenylpentyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(6-phenylhexyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-hydroxy-1-piperidinyl, 3-hydroxy-1-piperidinyl, 2-hydroxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-amino-1-piperidinyl, 3-amino-1-piperidinyl, 2-amino-1-piperidinyl, 4-dimethylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-methylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-ethylamino-1-piperidinyl, 2-propylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-n-butylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-pentylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-diethylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-propylamino)-1-piperidinyl, 4-carbamoyl-1-piperidinyl, 3-carbamoyl-1-piperidinyl, 3,5-dimethyl-1-piperidinyl, 2,5-dimethyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 3-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 3-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-amino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-amino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-dimethylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-ethylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-propylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-n-butylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pentylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-hexylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-diethylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-methyl-N-propylamino)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(N-ethyl-N-n-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

butylamino)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-acetylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-propionylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-butyrylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pentanoylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-hexanoylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-hydroxymethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(3-hydroxypropyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(4-hydroxybutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(5-hydroxypentyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(6-hydroxyhexyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(2-aminoethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(3-aminopropyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(4-aminobutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(5-aminopentyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(6-aminohexyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(methylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(2-ethylaminoethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(3-propylaminopropyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(4-n-butylaminobutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(5-pentylaminopentyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(6-hexylaminohexyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(N-methyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-ethyl-N-n-butylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylaminomethyl-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylaminomethyl-4-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylamino-4-chloro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylaminomethyl-4-chloro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylamino-4-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-ethylaminomethyl-4-ethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-propylaminomethyl-2-propyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-n-butylaminomethyl-2-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-pentylaminomethyl-2-n-butyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-hexylaminomethyl-2-chloro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-propylamino-2-chloro-1-pyrrolidin-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

yl, 4-n-butylamino-2-hexyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pentylamino-4-ethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-hexylamino-4-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-ethyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-propyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-n-butyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-pentyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-hexyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-formyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-acetyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-propionyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-butyryl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-pentanoyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-hexanoyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 2-methyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-ethyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-propyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-n-butyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-pentyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-hexyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-formyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-acetyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-propionyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-butyryl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-pentanoyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-hexanoyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-methyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-ethyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-propyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-n-butyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-pentyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-hexyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-formyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-acetyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-propionyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-butyryl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-pentanoyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-hexanoyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 3,5-dimethylmorpholino, 3-methylmorpholino, 3-ethylmorpholino, 2-propylmorpholino, 3-n-butylmorpholino, 3-pentyl-5-methylmorpholino, 3-hexyl-5-ethylmorpholino, 3-aminomethylmorpholino, 3-methylaminomethylmorpholino, 2-ethylaminomethylmorpholino, 3-propylaminomethylmorpholino, 3-n-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

butylaminomethylmorpholino, 2-pentylaminomethylmorpholino, 3-hexylaminomethylmorpholino, 3-(2-methylaminoethyl)-morpholino, 3-(3-methylaminopropyl)morpholino, 3-(4-methylaminobutyl)morpholino, 2-(5-methylaminopentyl)-morpholino, 3-(6-methylaminohexyl)morpholino, 4-(5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-tert-butyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-phenyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-(5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-(5-phenyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylaminomorpholino, 3,5-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3,3-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-ethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-ethyl-4-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-trifluoromethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-(fluoro-methyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-methylthio-1-piperazinyl, 4-methylthio-1-piperazinyl, 3-ethylthio-1-piperazinyl, 3-methylthiomorpholino, 4-fluoro-1-piperidinyl, 3-fluoro-1-piperazinyl, 3-chloro-1-piperazinyl, 3-amino-4-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-amino-4-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-amino-4-methoxy-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-amino-4-fluoro-1-piperidinyl, 3-amino-4-hydroxy-1-piperidinyl, 3-amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-benzyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-fluoro-methylmorpholino, 3-chloromethylmorpholino, 4-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 3-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 2-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 3-acetylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-ethyl-N-acetylamino)-

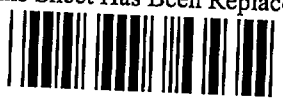
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

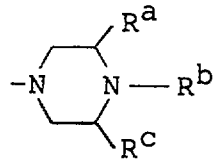
methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-t-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-cyclopropylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-cyclopropylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-cyclopentylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclohexylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-cycloheptylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-cyclooctylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-cyclopropylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-cyclopropylaminomorpholino, 4-thio-1-piperidinyl, 3-thio-1-piperazinyl, 3-thiomorpholino, 4-cyclopropylaminomethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-cyclopropylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-cyclopropylaminomethyl-1-piperidinyl, 3-cyclopropylaminomethylmorpholino, 4-(2-cyclopentylaminoethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-cyclohexylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(4-cyclobutylaminobutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(5-cyclooctylaminopentyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(6-cyclopropylaminohexyl)morpholino, 3-acetylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(2-propionylaminoethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-butyrylaminopropyl)-1-piperidinyl, 3-(4-pentanoylaminobutyl)morpholino, 4-(5-hexanoylaminopentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(6-acetylaminohexyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(N-acetyl-N-ethylamino)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-cyclopropyl-N-acetylamino)methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(methoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-ethoxycarbonylaminoethyl)-1-piperidinyl, 3-(3-propoxycarbonylaminopropyl)morpholino, 3-(4-pentyloxycarbonylaminobutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(5-hexyloxycarbonylaminopentyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(6-t-butoxycarbonylaminohexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

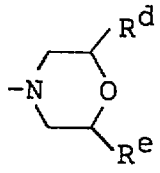


THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

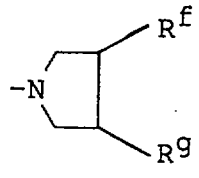
methylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(N-methoxy-carbonyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl)-1-piperazinyl and 4-(N-propoxycarbonyl-N-cyclohexylaminomethyl)-1-piperidinyl. The term "a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be substituted" also includes the group represented by the formula:



wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^b is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a phenyl(lower)alkyl, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which is substituted by a (lower) alkyl, and R^c is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl; the group represented by the formula:



wherein R^d is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and R^e is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl; the group represented by the formula:

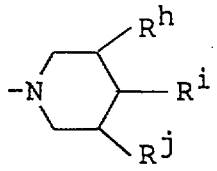


wherein R^f is an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents selected from the group consiting of a (lower)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

alkyl and a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, or a amino(lower)alkyl which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, R^g is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl; the group represented by the formula:



wherein R^h is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^i is hydrogen atom, hydroxy, a halogen atom or oxo, and R^j is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkly; and the like.

The term "a cycloalkyl" includes C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl or cyclooctyl.

The term "a phenyl (lower) alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a (lower) alkoxy, nitro or amino" includes phenylalkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, nitro or amino and the alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, 1-phenylethyl, 3-phenylpropyl, 4-phenylbutyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethyl, 5-phenylpentyl, 6-phenylhexyl, 2-methyl-3-phenylpropyl, 4-methoxybenzyl, 3-ethoxybenzyl, 2-propoxybenzyl, 4-n-butoxybenzyl, 3-pentyloxybenzyl, 2-hexyloxybenzyl, 4-nitrobenzyl, 3-nitrobenzyl, 4-aminobenzyl, 2-aminobenzyl, 2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl, 1-(3-ethoxyphenyl)ethyl, 3-(2-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

propoxyphenyl)propyl, 4-(4-n-butoxyphenyl)butyl, 5-(2-nitrophenyl)pentyl or 6-(3-aminophenyl)hexyl.

The term "a phenyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom or a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms" includes phenyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a halogen atom or by a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms, such as phenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 3-bromophenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 4-iodophenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 3-ethylphenyl, 2-propylphenyl, 4-n-butylphenyl, 3-pentylphenyl, 2-hexylphenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 3-(2-chloroethyl)phenyl, 2-(3,3-dibromopropyl)phenyl, 4-(4-chlorobutyl)phenyl, 3-(5-iodopentyl)phenyl, 4-(6-fluorohexyl)phenyl, 2-(1,2,2-trifluoroethyl)phenyl or 4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)phenyl.

The term "a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, an amino which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a cycloalkyl or a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, a (lower) alkoxy and a halogen atom" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy; an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents selected from the group consisting of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl, a C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl and a straight

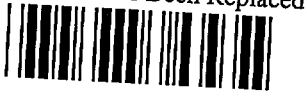
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy and a halogen atom, such as hyroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 1-hyroxyethyl, 3-hydroxypropyl, 4-hydroxybutyl, 5-hyroxypentyl, 6-hydroxyhexyl, 3-chloropropyl, bromomethyl, 2-fluoroethyl, 4-chlorobutyl, 3-fluoropentyl, 2,3-dichlorohexyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, aminomethyl, 2-aminoethyl, 1-aminoethyl, 3-aminopropyl, 4-aminobutyl, 5-aminopentyl, 6-aminohexyl, 3-dimethylaminopropyl, 2-ethylaminoethyl, 4-propylaminobutyl, 5-n-butylaminopentyl, 6-pentylaminohexyl, methylaminomethyl, diethylaminomethyl, 2-dipropylaminoethyl, 1-di-n-butylaminoethyl, 3-dipentylaminopropyl, 4-dihexylaminobutyl, N-methyl-N-ethylaminomethyl, N-methyl-N-propylaminomethyl, methoxymethyl, ethoxymethyl, 2-propoxyethyl, 3-butoxypropyl, 4-pentyloxybutyl, 5-hexyloxypentyl, 6-methoxyhexyl, propoxymetyl, 1-ethoxyethyl, 2-hexyloxyethyl, formylaminomethyl, acetylaminomethyl, 2-propanoylaminoethyl, 3-butyrylaminopropyl, 4-pentanoylaminobutyl, 5-hexanoylaminopentyl, 6-acetylaminohexyl, propanoylaminomethyl, 1-acetylaminoethyl, 2-hexanoylaminoethyl, N-acetyl-N-methylaminomethyl, N-acetyl-N-ethylaminomethyl, N-acetyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl, N,N-dicyclopropylaminomethyl, cyclopropylaminomethyl, 2-cyclobutylaminoethyl, 3-cyclopentylaminopropyl, 1-cyclopropylaminoethyl, 2-cyclopropylaminoethyl, aminopropyl, 4-cyclohexylaminobutyl, 5-cycloheptylaminopentyl, 6-cyclooctylaminohexyl, N-methyl-N-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

cyclopropylaminomethyl, N-ethyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl, methoxycarbonylaminomethyl, 2-ethoxycarbonylaminoethyl, 3-propoxycarbonylaminopropyl, 4-t-butoxycarbonylaminobutyl, 5-pentyloxycarbonylaminopentyl, 6-hexyloxycarbonylaminohexyl, t-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl, 2-t-butoxycarbonylaminoethyl, 1-t-butoxycarbonylaminoethyl, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-methyl-aminomethyl, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylaminomethyl or N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl.

The term "a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms, such as formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, pentanoyl, hexanoyl, α,α,α-trifluoroacetyl, β,β,β-trifluoro-α,α-difluoropropionyl, γ,γ,γ-trifluoro-β,β-difluoro-α,α-difluorobutyryl, α,α-dichloroacetyl, α-bromoacetyl, α-iodoacetyl, β-fluoropropionyl, β-fluoro-α-fluoropropionyl, 6-fluorohexanoyl or 4-chloropentanoyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropionyl.

The term "a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy" includes a straight chain or branched chain (C_2-C_6)alkenyl-carbonyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy, such as 3-carboxyacryloyl, 3-carboxy-2,3-dichloroacryloyl, 3-carboxy-2,3-dibromoacryloyl, 4-carboxycrotonoyl, 4-carboxyisocrotonoyl, 5-carboxy-3-pentenoyl, 6-carboxy-4-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

hexenoyl, 4-carboxy-3-fluorocrotonoyl or 5-carboxy-3,4-dichloro-3-hexenoyl.

The term "a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl" includes a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl, such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl, pentyloxycarbonyl or hexyloxycarbonyl.

The term "an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl" includes aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as carbamoyl, methylaminocarbonyl, ethylaminocarbonyl, propylaminocarbonyl, n-butylamino-carbonyl, pentylaminocarbonyl, hexylaminocarbonyl, dimethyl-aminocarbonyl, diethylaminocarbonyl, dipropylaminocarbonyl, dipentylaminocarbonyl, dihexylaminocarbonyl, N-methyl-N-propylaminocarbonyl, N-methyl-N-tert-butylaminocarbonyl or N-ethyl-N-pentylaminocarbonyl.

The term "a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl" includes phenylalkoxycarbonyl in which alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, such as benzyloxycarbonyl, 2-phenylethoxycarbonyl, 1-phenylethoxy-carbonyl, 3-phenylpropoxycarbonyl, 4-phenylbutoxycarbonyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethoxycarbonyl, 5-phenylpentyloxy-carbonyl, 6-phenylhexyloxycarbonyl or 2-methyl-3-phenyl-propoxycarbonyl.

The term "an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 aminoalkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenylalkoxycarbonyl in which alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, such as 2-aminoacetyl, 3-aminopropionyl, 4-aminobutyryl, 5-aminopentanoyl, 6-aminohexanoyl, 2-benzyloxycarbonylamino-acetyl, 2-(2-phenylethoxycarbonylamino)acetyl, 2-(3-phenylpropoxycarbonylamino)acetyl, 3-(4-phenylbutoxy-carbonylamino)propionyl, 4-(1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethoxy-carbonylamino)butyryl, 5-(5-phenylpentyloxycarbonyl-amino)pentanoyl, 6-(6-phenylhexyloxycarbonylamino)hexanoyl or 2-(2-methyl-3-phenylpropoxycarbonylamino)acetyl.

The term "a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl(lower)alkyl" includes alkoxycarbonylalkyl in which alkoxy and alkyl moieties are a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy and alkyl, respectively, such as methoxycarbonylmethyl, ethoxycarbonylmethyl, 2-ethoxycarbonylethyl, 3-propoxy-carbonylpropyl, 4-butoxycarbonylbutyl, 5-pentyloxycarbonyl-pentyl, 6-hexyloxycarbonylhexyl, 2-methoxycarbonylethyl, 3-methoxycarbonylpropyl, 3-ethoxycarbonylpropyl or 4-ethoxy-carbonybutyl.

The term "a carboxy(lower)alkyl" includes carboxyalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as carboxymethyl, 2-carboxyethyl, 3-carboxypropyl, 4-carboxybutyl, 5-carboxy-pentyl, 6-carboxyhexyl, 1-carboxyethyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

carboxyethyl or 2-methyl-3-carboxypropyl.

The term "an anilinocarbonyl(lower)alkyl" includes anilinocarbonylalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as anilinocarbonylmethyl, 2-anilinocaronylethyl, 1-anilinocarbonylethyl, 3-anilinocarbonylpropyl, 4-anilinocarbonylbutyl, 5-anilinocarbonylpentyl, 6-anilinocarbonylhexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-anilinocarbonylethyl or 2-methyl-3-anilinocarbonylpropyl.

The term "an amino which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl or a phenyl(lower)alkyl" includes amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl, a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxycarbonyl or a phenylalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as amino, methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, t-butylamino, pentylamino, hexylamino, dimethylamino, diethylamino, di-n-propylamino, di-n-butylamino, dipentylamino, dihexylamino, N-methyl-N-n-butylamino, N-methyl-N-pentylamino, N-ethyl-N-hexylamino, acetylamino, formylamino, propionylamino, butyrylamino, pentanoylamino, hexanoylamino, N-methyl-N-acetylamino, N-ethyl-N-propionylamino, N-methyl-N-butyrylamino, N-n-propyl-N-pentanoylamino, N-ethyl-N-hexanoylamino, methoxycrbonylamino, ethoxycarbonylamino, propoxycarbonylamino, t-butoxycarbonylamino, pentyloxycarbonylamino,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

hexyloxycarbonylamino, butoxycarbonylamino, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-methylamino, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylamino, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-benzylamino, benzylamino, (2-phenylethyl)amino, (1-phenylethyl)amino, (3-phenylpropyl)amino, (4-phenylbutyl)amino, (5-phenylpentyl)amino or (6-phenylhexyl)amino.

The term "a 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms" includes 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms, such as 2(5H)-furanon-5-yl, 3,4-dibromo-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl, 3,4-dichloro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl, 3-chloro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl, 4-fluoro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl or 3-iodo-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl.

The term "a sulfo(lower)alkyl" includes sulfoalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or brahched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as sulfomethyl, 2-sulfoethyl, 1-sulfoethyl, 3-sulfopropyl, 4-sulfobutyl, 5-sulfopentyl, 6-sulfohexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-sulfoethyl or 2-methyl-3-sulfopropyl.

The term "a (lower) alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms, such as methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, isopropylsulfonyl, n-butylsulfonyl, pentylsulfonyl, hexylsulfonyl, trifluoromethylsufonyl, 2-fluoroethylsulfonyl, 3-fluoropropylsulfonyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutylsulfonyl, 5-chloropentylsulfonyl, 6-bromohexyl-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

sulfonyl, 6-iodohexylsulfonyl, 2,2-difluoroethylsulfonyl or 2,3-dibromopropylsulfonyl.

The term "a (lower) alkoxy" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, tert-butoxy, pentyloxy or hexyloxy.

The term "a (lower) alkanoyloxy" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkanoyloxy, such as acetyloxy, propionyloxy, butyryloxy, isobutyryloxy, pentanoyloxy or hexanoyloxy.

The term "a (lower) alkenyl" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkenyl, such as vinyl, allyl, 2-butenyl, 3-butenyl, 1-methylallyl, 2-pentenyl or 2-hexenyl.

The term "a (lower) alkynyl" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkynyl, such as ethynyl, 2-propynyl, 2-butynyl, 3-butynyl, 1-methyl-2-propynyl, 2-pentynyl or 2-hexynyl.

The term "a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl" includes 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (5-tert-butyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (5-phenyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (5-pentyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (5-hexyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

methyl, (5-ethyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl or (5-propyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl.

The term "a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethylamino which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl" includes 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethylamino which may be substituted by phenyl or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-tert-butyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-phenyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-pentyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-hexyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-ethyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, or (5-propyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino.

The term "a cycloalkylamino" includes C_3-C_8 cycloalkylamino, such as cyclopropylamino, cyclobutylamino, cyclopentylamino, cyclohexylamino, cycloheptylamino or cyclooctylamino.

The term "a (lower) alkylthio" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkylthio, such as methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, tert-butylthio, penthylthio or hexylthio.

The term "a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring" includes phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring, such as phenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 3-ethoxyphenyl, 2-propoxyphenyl, 4-n-butoxyphenyl, 3-pentyloxyphenyl, 2-hexyloxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 2,4,6-trimethoxyphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 3-chlorophenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 4-bromophenyl, 2-iodophenyl, 2,4-difluorophenyl, 2,6-difluorophenyl, 3,4-difluorophenyl, 2,5-difluorophenyl, 2,4-dichlorophenyl, 2,6-dibromophenyl, 2,4,6-trifluorophenyl, 3,4,6-trichlorophenyl, 4-fluoro-2-methoxyphenyl, 2-fluoro-4-hydroxyphenyl, 2-hydroxyphenyl, 3-hydroxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 2,3-dihydroxyphenyl, 2,4-dihydroxyphenyl or 2,4,6-trihydroxyphenyl.

The term "a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkanoyloxy or hydroxy" includes, in addition to the above-mentioned (lower) alkyl, a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl which is substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom, a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkanoyloxy or hydroxy, such as hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 1-hydroxyethyl, 3-hydroxypropyl, 4-hydroxybutyl, 5-hydroxypentyl, 6-hydroxyhexyl, 3-chloropropyl, bromomethyl, 2-fluoroethyl, 4-chlorobutyl, 3-fluoropentyl, difluoromethyl, 2,3-dichlorohexyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, acetyloxymethyl, 2-propionyloxyethyl, 3-butyryloxypropyl, 4-pentanoyloxybutyl, 5-hexanoyloxypentyl, 6-acetyloxyhexyl, propanoyloxymethyl,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

1-acetyloxyethyl, 2-acetyloxyethyl or 2-hexanoyloxyethyl.

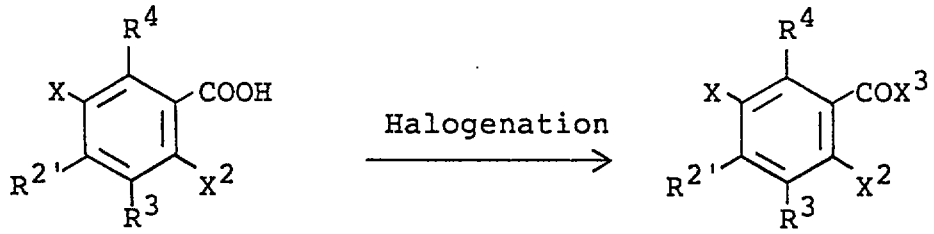
The compounds of the present invention of the above general formula [1] can be prepared by various processes and preferably prepared, for example, by the processes as shown in the following reaction schemes.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

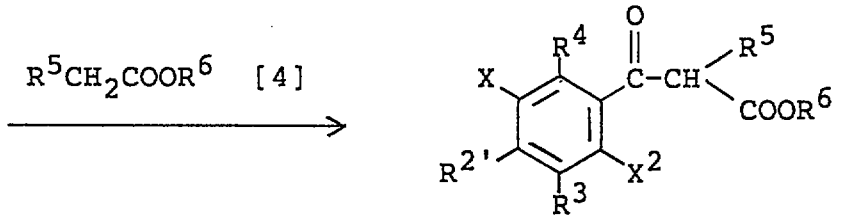


THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

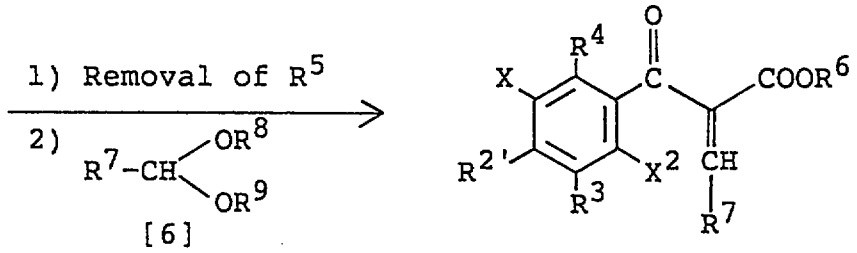
[Reaction scheme-I]



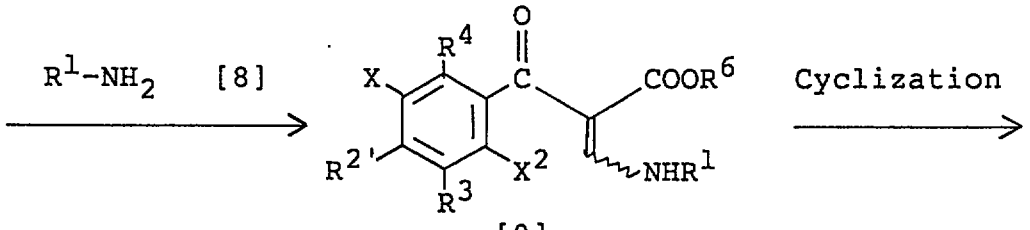
[2] [3]



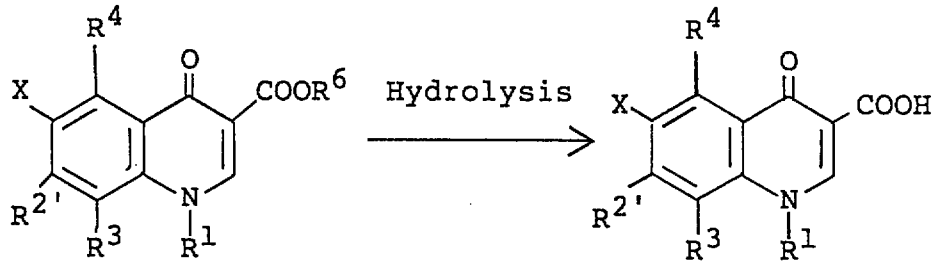
[5]



[6] [7]



[9]



[1a] [1a']

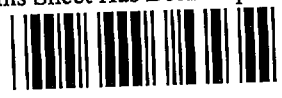
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

wherein R^1, R^2, R^3 R^4 and X are as defined above, $R^{2'}$ is a halogen atom or the R^2 group (R^2 is as defined above), R^5 is a group of the formula: $-COR^{10}$ (wherein R^{10} is a (lower) alkyl) or a group of the formula: $-COOR^{11}$ (wherein R^{11} is a (lower) alkyl), R^6 is a (lower) alkyl, R^7 is a group of the formula: $-N\begin{matrix}R^{12}\\R^{13}\end{matrix}$ (wherein R^{12} and R^{13} are each a (lower) alkyl) or a (lower) alkoxy, X^2 and X^3 are each a halogen atom, R^8 and R^9 are each a (lower) alkyl.

The halogenation of the compound [2] is carried out by reacting with a halogenating agent in the presence or absence of a solvent. The solvent includes aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform and carbon tetrachloride, ethers such as dioxane, tetrahydrofuran and diethyl ether, dimethylformamide (DMF), dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), and the like. The halogenating agent may be any conventional halogenating agents which can convert hydroxy in carboxy group into a halogen atom, and includes, for example, thionyl chloride, phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus oxybromide, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus pentabromide, and the like. The amounts of the compound [2] and the halogenating agent are not particularly limited, but, in case of using no solvent, the halogenating agent is usually used in a large excess amount, and in case of using a solvent, the halogenating agent is usually used in an

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

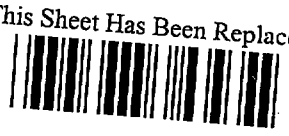


THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 2 to 4 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [2]. The reaction temperature and the reaction period of time are not particularly limited either, but the reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 100°C for about 30 minutes to about 6 hours.

The reaction between the compound [3] and the compound [4] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The solvent used in the reaction may be any conventional solvents unless they give any undesirable effect on the reaction, and includes, for example, water, ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, monoglyme and diglyme, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, aliphatic hydrocarbons such as n-hexane, heptane, cyclohexane and ligroin, amines such as pyridine and N,N-dimethylaniline, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane and carbon tetrachloride, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and hexamethylphosphoramide (HMPA), and a mixture of these solvents. The basic compound employed in the reacion includes inorganic bases such as metallic sodium, metallic potassium, metallic magnesium, sodium hydride, sodium amide, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate and sodium hydrogen carbonate, metal alcoholates such as sodium methylate and sodium ethylate,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

and organic bases such as pyridine, piperidine, quinoline, triethylamine and N,N-dimethylaniline. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 120°C, for about 0.5 to about 20 hours. The compound [4] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [3]. The basic compound is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [3].

The compound [5] wherein R^5 is the group of the formula: $-COR^{10}$ is subjected to the reaction for removal of the group: $-COR^{10}$ in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The solvent used in the reaction includes, for example, ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, monoglyme and diglyme, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, aliphatic hydrocarbons such as n-hexane, heptane and cyclohexane, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and the like. The basic compound includes ammonia gas, aqueous ammonia, ammonium salts such as ammonium chloride, primary or secondary amines such as ethylamine, diethylamine and piperidine, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 1 to about 20 hours.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The compound [5] wherein R^5 is a group of the formula: $-COOR^{11}$ is subjected to the reaction for removal of the group: $-COOR^{11}$ in an aqueous solution in the presence of an acid catalyst. The acid catalyst used in the reaction includes mineral acids such as hydrochloric acid and sulfuric acid, and organic acids such as p-toluenesulfonic acid. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 1 to about 20 hours.

The reaction between the obtained R^5 group-removed compound and the compound [6] is carried out in a suitable solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction may be any solvents which are used in the above reaction for the removal of the R^4 group in addition to anhydrous (lower) alkanoic acid such as acetic anhydride. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 200°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 150°C, for about 0.5 to about 10 hours. The comound [6] is usually used in an equimolar to large excess amount, preferably in an equimolar to 2 times molar amount based on the compound [5]. In case of using a compound [6] wherein R^7 is a (lower) alkoxy group, the reaction may also be carried out by using acid anhydrides such as acetic anhydride as a solvent as well as the above-mentioned solvents at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 200°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 170°C.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The reaction between the compound [7] and the compound [8] is carried out in a suitable solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction may be any conventional solvents unless they give any undesirable effect on the reaction, and includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and propanol, ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, monoglyme and diglyme, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, aliphatic hydrocarbons such as n-hexane, heptane, cyclohexane and ligroin, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, methylene chloride and carbon tetrachloride, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 0.1 to about 15 hours. The compound [8] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [7]. In the reaction, a basic compound may optionally be added. Such basic compound may be any basic compounds which are used in the above reaction between the compound [3] and the compound [4].

The cyclization of the compound [9] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The solvent employed in the reaction may be any conventional solvents unless they give any undesirable effect on the reaction, and includes, for example, ethers such as diethyl

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, monoglyme and diglyme, aliphatic hydrocarbons such as n-hexane, heptane and ligroin, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, methylene chloride and carbon tetrachloride, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and the like. The basic compound employed in the reaction includes inorganic bases such as metallic sodium, metallic potassium, sodium hydride, sodium amide, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate, metal alcoholates such as sodium methylate and sodium ethylate, organic bases such as 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undecene-7 (DBU), N-benzyltrimethylammonium hydroxide and tetrabutylammonium hydroxide, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C, for about 0.5 to about 15 hours. The basic compound is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [9].

The hydrolysis of the compound [1a] can be carried out under the conditions of conventional hydrolysis, for instance, in the presence of a basic compound such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, barium hydroxide or potassium carbonate, a mineral acid such as sulfuric acid, hydrochloric acid or nitric acid, or an organic acid such as acetic acid or aromatic sulfonic acids, in a solvent including water, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, ketones such as acetone and methyl ethyl ketone,

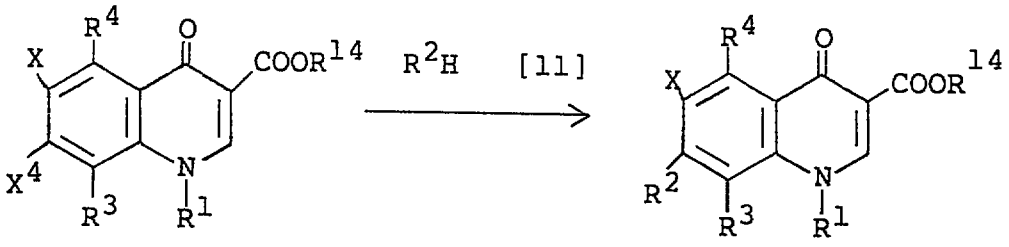
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

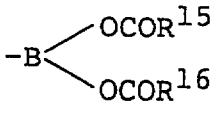
ethers such as dioxane and ethylene glycol diethyl ether, acetic acid, or a mixture thereof. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C, for about 0.1 to about 30 hours. By the reaction, there is produced the compound [1a'].

[Reaction Scheme-II]



[1b] [1b']

wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined above, X^4 is a halogen atom, and R^{14} is hydrogen atom or a group of the formula:



(wherein R^{15} and R^{16} are each an alkyl).

For conducting the reaction between the compound [1b] and the comound [11], both compounds are used in a wide range of ratio, and the compound [11] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably about 1 to about 5 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [1b]. The reaction is carried out in an innert solvent, which includes, for example, water, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, butanol, amyl alcohol and isoamyl alcohol,

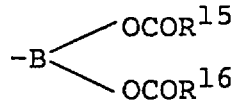
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, ethers such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane and diglyme, dimethylacetamide, DMF, DMSO, HMPA, N-methylpyrrolidone, and the like and a mixture thereof. Among these solvents, the preferred one is DMF, DMSO, HMPA, and N-methylpyrrolidone. The reaction may also be carried out in the presence of an acid-removing agent, including inorganic carbonates such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate and potassium hydrogen carbonate and organic bases such as pyridine, quinoline and triethylamine. An alkaline methal halide such as potassium fluoride may also be added to the reaction mixture. The reaction is usually carried out under a pressure of from 1 to 20 atm., preferably from 1 to 10 atm., at a temperature of from room temperature to around 250°C, preferably from room temperature to around 200°C, for about 10 minutes to about 30 hours.

The compound [1b'] wherein R^{14} is a group of the formula:



can be converted into the corresponding compound [1b'] wherein R^{14} is hydrogen atom by treating the former compound with an acid or a base to decompose the chelate compound. The acid employed in the reaction includes mineral acids such as hydrochloric acid and sulfuric acid, and organic acids such as acetic acid and p-toluenesulfonic acid. The

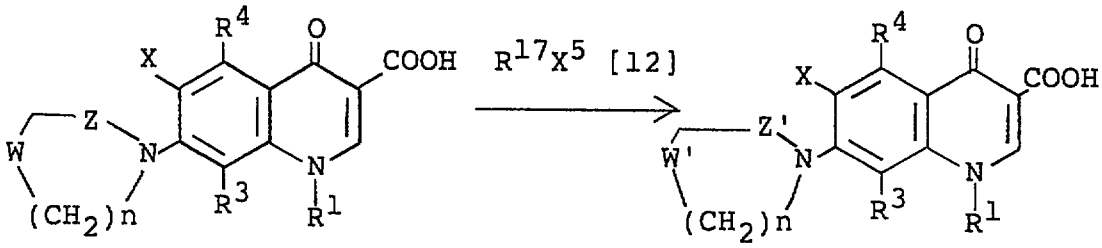
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

base employed in the reaction includes mineral bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate and potassium carbonate, and organic bases such as triethylamine. The reaction favorably proceeds at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 100°C. The acid or the base may be used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 10 moles, per 1 mole of the starting compound.

[Reaction scheme-III]



wherein X, R^1, R^3 and R^4 are as defined above, either Z or W is $-CH_2-$ and the other is -NH, n is an integer of 1 to 3, R^{17} is a (lower) alkyl; a cycloalkyl; a phenyl(lower)alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a (lower) alkoxy, nitro or amino; a phenyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom or a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a pyridyl; a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents of a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

cycloalkyl or a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, a (lower) alkoxy and a halogen atom; a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms; a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl(lower)alkyl; a carboxy(lower)alkyl; an anilinocarbonyl(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a sulfo(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkenyl or a (lower) alkynyl, X^5 is a halogen atom, and either Z' or W' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is $-NR^{17}$.

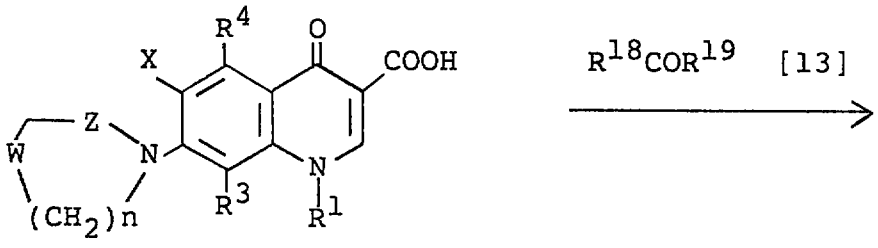
The reaction between the compound [1c] and the compound [12] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a hydrogen halide-removing agent. The solvent includes water, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, ketones such as acetone and methyl ethyl ketone, ethers such as diethyl ether and dioxane, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, and the like. The hydrogen halide-removing agent includes inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate, alkaline metals such as sodium and potassium, and organic bases such as pyridine and piperidine. If necessary, copper powders, copper halides

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

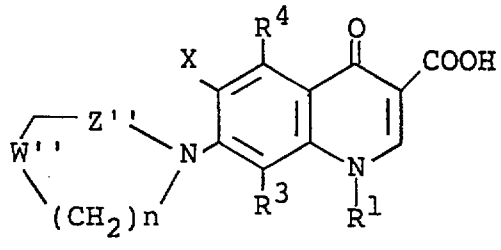


such as copper iodide or alkaline metal halides such as sodium iodide and potassium iodide may also be employed. The compound [12] is usually used in an equimolar to large excess amount, preferably 1 to 3 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [1c]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 150°C, preferably from around 50°C to around 120°C, for about 1 to about 12 hours.

[Reaction scheme - IV]



[1c]



[1e]

wherein R^1, R^3, R^4, Z, W, n and X are as defined above, R^{18} and R^{19} are each hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, and either Z'' or W'' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is $-N-CH\begin{matrix}R^{18}\\R^{19}\end{matrix}$.

The reaction between the compound [1c] and the compound [13] is carried out in the presence or absence of a solvent in the presence of a reducing agent. The solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, water,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, lower alkanoic acids such as formic acid and acetic acid, ethers such as dioxane, diethyl ether, diglyme and tetrahydrofuran, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzen, xylene and toluene, and the like. The reducing agent includes formic acid, alkaline metal or alkaline earth metal salts of formic acid such as sodium formate, reducing agents for hydrogenation such as sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride and lithium aluminum hydride, catalysts for catalytic reduction such as palladium black, palladium carbon, platinum oxide, platinum black and Raney nickel, and the like. In case of using formic acid as the reducing agent, the reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from around 50°C to around 150°C, for about 1 to about 10 hours. Formic acid is preferably used in a large excess amount to the compound [1c]. Besides, in case of using a reducing agent for hydrogenation, the reaction is usually carried out at a temprature of from around -30°C to around 100°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 70°C, for about 30 minutes to about 12 hours. The reducing agent is usually used in an amount of from 1 to 20 moles, preferably from 1 to 6 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [1c]. In case of using lithium aluminum hydride as the reducing agent, a preferable solvent includes ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran and diglyme, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, and the like. In case of using a

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

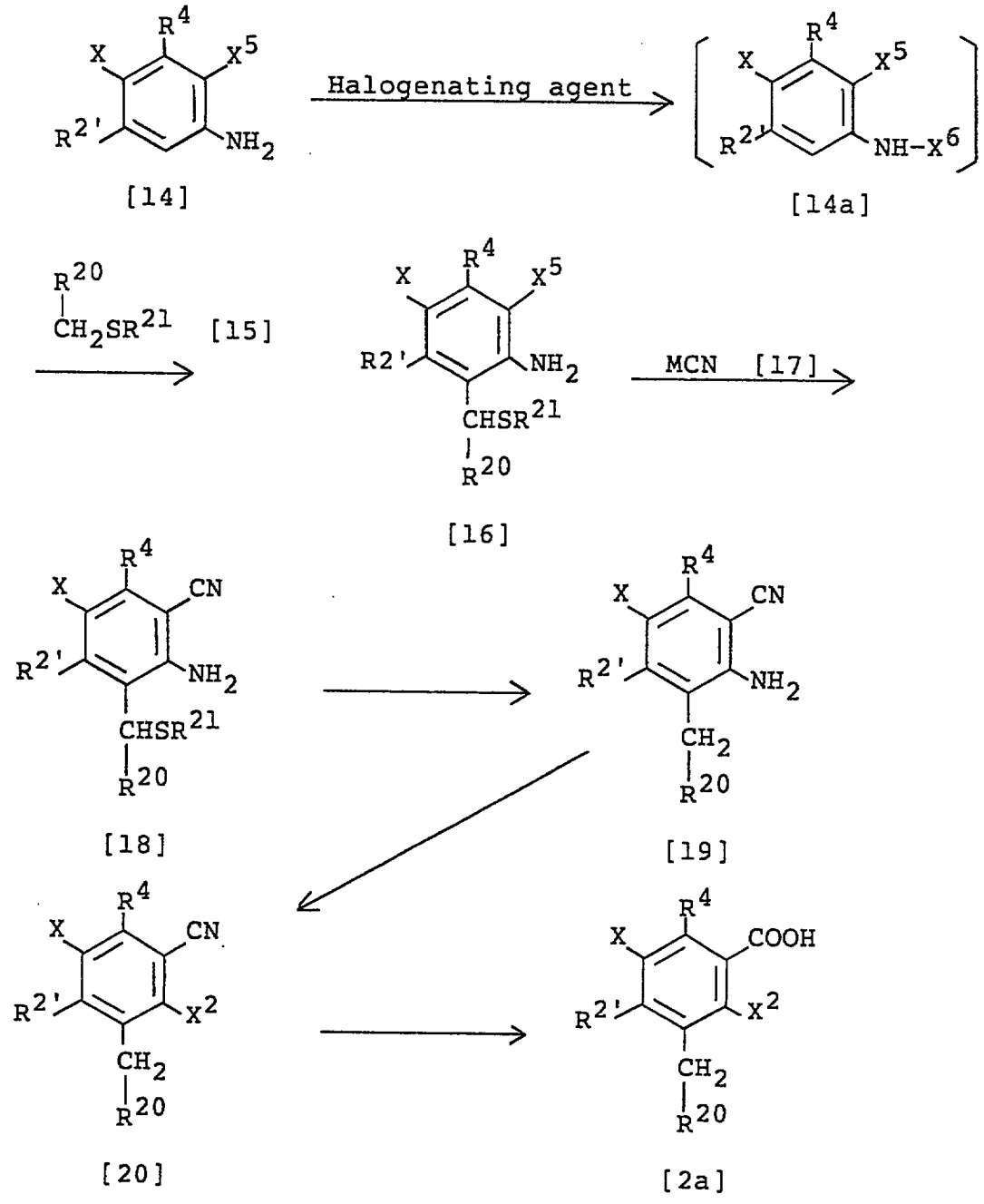
catalyst for catalytic reduction, the reaction is usually carried out under a hydrogen pressure of from ordinary pressure to 20 atm., preferably from ordinary pressure to 10 atm., at a temperature of from -30°C to 100°C, preferably from 0°C to 60°C, for 1 to 12 hours. The catalyst is usually used in an amount of from 0.1 to 40% by weight, preferably from 0.1 to 20% by weight, of the compound [1c]. The compound [13] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 mole to a large excess amount, per 1 mole of the compound [1c].

In the reaction scheme-I, the starting compounds of the formula [2] are novel or known compounds, which can be prepared, for example, by the process as shown in the following reaction scheme-V.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



[Reaction scheme-V]



wherein X, $R^{2'}$, R^4 and X^2 are as defined above, X^5 and X^6 are each a halogen atom, R^{20} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl and R^{21} is a (lower) alkyl, in which R^{20} and R^{21} may

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

be taken together to form a 5- to 7-membered ring, and M is an alkaline metal such as sodium or potassium, or a metal such as silver, calcium or copper.

In case that R^{20} and R^{21} of the compound [16] are taken together to form a 5- to 7-membered ring, R^{20} of the compound [20] is $-R^{20}-R^{21}-H$.

The compound [16] can be prepared by reacting the starting aniline derivative of the formula [14] with a halogenating agent and then reacting the resultant compound of the formula [14a] with the thio compound of the formula [15].

The reaction between the aniline derivative [14] and the halogenating agent is usually carried out in a suitable solvent. The solvent may be any conventional solvents unless they give any undesirable effect on the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform and dichloromethane, ethers such as dioxane, diethyl ether and tetrahydrofuran, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, lower alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, polar solvents such as DMSO, HMPA and acetonitrile, and the like. The halogenating agent employed in the above reaction may be any conventional halogenating agents and includes, for example, N-bromosuccinimide, N-chlorosuccinimide, sodium hypobromite, sodium hypochlorite, bleaching powder, thionyl chloride, tert-butyl hypochloride, and the like. The

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

halogenating agent is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 6 moles, per 1 mole of the starting compound. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -78°C to room temperature, preferably from around -60°C to around 15°C, and usually completes in a moment or within a few minutes.

By the reaction, there is produced the intermediate of the formula [14a]. While the resultant compound [14a] may be separated from the reaction mixture to provide it for a subsequent reaction, the reaction mixture is usually subjected to the reaction with the thio compound of the formula [15] without separating it from the reaction mixture.

The reaction between the intermediate compound [14a] and the compound [15] is carried out in the same solvent and at the same temperature as mentioned above in the presence of a suitable basic compound. The preferable basic compound which can be employed in the reaction includes inorganic bases such as potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, sodium hydrogen carbonate, sodium amide and sodium hydride, and organic bases including tertiary amines such as triethylamine, tripropylamine, pyridine and quinoline. The compound [15] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the intermediate compound [14a]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



temperature to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 1 to about 50 hours.

The reaction between the compound [16] and the compound [17] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence or absence of a basic compound. The solvent employed in the reaction includes water, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, ethers such as dioxane, tetrahydrofuran and diglyme, polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO, HMPA and N-methylpyrrolidone, or a mixture thereof. The basic compound includes, for example, inorganic carbonates such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate and potassium hydrogen carbonate, organic bases such as pyridine, quinoline and triethylamine, phase transfer catalysts such as phenyltriethylammonium chloride and tetramethylammonium chloride, and the like. The compound [17] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [16]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 180°C, for about 0.5 to about 10 hours.

The desulfurization of the compound [18] for preparing the compound [19] is usually carried out in a solvent in the presence of a suitable catalyst. The catalyst includes, for example, aluminum-amalgam, lithium-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

(lower) alkylamine, Raney nickel, Raney cobalt, triethyl phosphite, triphenyl phosphine, and the like, and preferably Raney nickel. The solvent includes alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, ethers such as diehtyl ether, dioxane and tetrahydrofuran, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours. The catalyst is usually used in an amount of from 1 to 10-fold by weight of the compound [18].

The reaction of converting the compound [19] into the compound [20] is carried out by reacting the compound [19] with a metallic salt of nitrous acid such as sodium nitrite or potassium nitrite in a suitable solvent in the presence of an acid, and then reacting the resultant product, without separation from the reaction mixture, with a metal halide such as potassium iodide, copper (I) chloride or copper (I) bromide. The acid employed in the reaction includes mineral acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid and hydrobromic acid. The solvent includes water, alkanoic acids such as acetic acid, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzen, toluene and xylene, alcohols such as methanol, ehtanol and isopropanol, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane and dichloroethane, ethers such as dioxane and tetrahydrofuran, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and a mixture

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

thereof. The metallic salt of nitrous acid and the metal halide each is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [19]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 100°C, for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours.

The hydrolysis of the compound [20] can be carried out in the presence of a suitable hydrolysis catalyst, including a mineral alkaline compound, e.g., a hydrohalogenic acid such as hydrochloric acid or hydrobromic acid, a mineral acid such as sulfuric acid or phosphoric acid, an alkaline metal hydroxide such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, an alkaline metal carbonate or hydrogencarbonate such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or sodium hydrogen carbonate, in the presence or absence of a suitable solvent, such as, for example, water or a mixture of water and a lower alcohol such as methanol or ehtanol. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from 50°C to 200°C, preferably from 70°C to 180°C, for about 1 to about 10 hours.

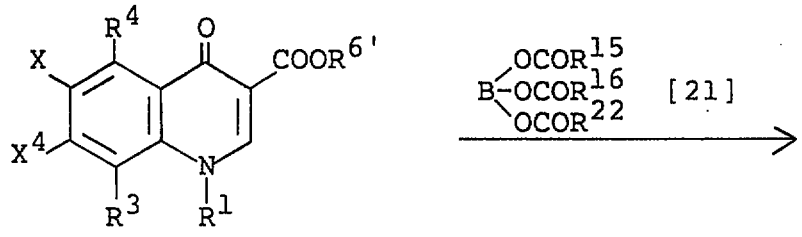
In the reaction scheme-II, the compounds of the formula [1b] wherein R^{14} is a group: $-B\begin{<}OCOR^{15}\\OCOR^{16}\end{>}$ can be prepared, for example, by the process as shown in the following reaction scheme-VI.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

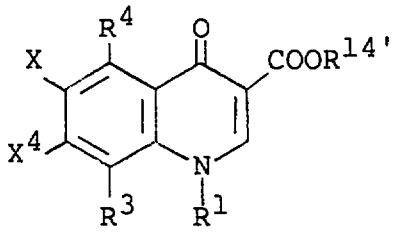


THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

[Reaction scheme-VI]



[1f]

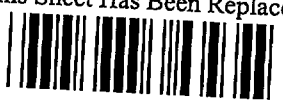


[1g]

wherein R^1, R^3, R^4, X, X^4, R^{15} and R^{16} are as defined above, $R^{6'}$ is a (lower) alkyl or hydrogen atom, $R^{14'}$ is a group: $-B(OCOR^{15})(OCOR^{16})$, and R^{22} is a (lower) alkyl.

The reaction between the compound [1f] and the compound [21] is carried out in a suitable solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, the solvents employed in the reaction between the R^5 group-removed compound and the compound [6] in the above reaction scheme-I. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C, for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours. The compound [21] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 10 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [1f].

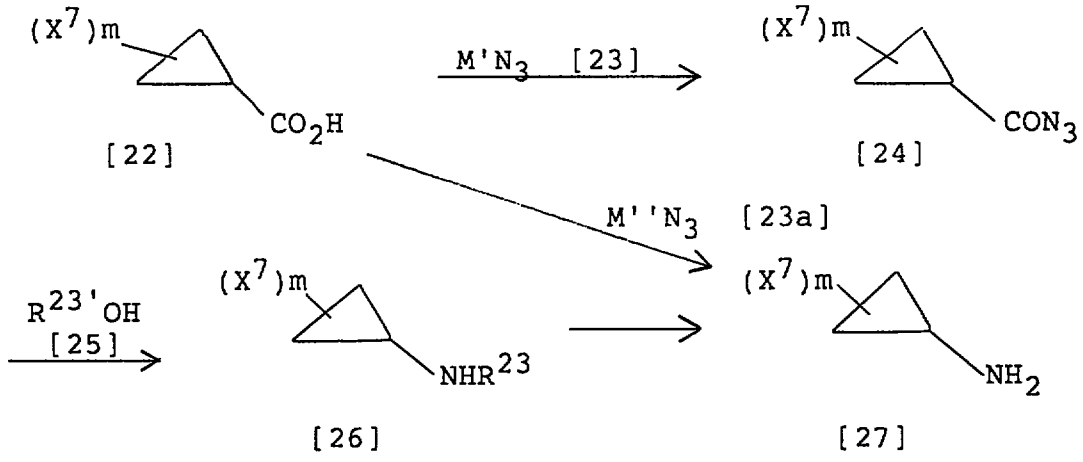
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The compounds [8] employed in the reaction scheme-I are novel or known compounds, which can be prepared, for example, by the process as shown in the following reaction scheme-VII.

[Reaction scheme-VII]



wherein X^7 is a halogen atom, R^{23} is a phenyl(lower)-alkoxycarbonyl, $R^{23'}$ is a phenyl(lower)alkyl, m is an integer of 1 to 3, M' is an alkaline metal such as sodium or potassium, and M'' is hydrogen atom or M'.

The reaction between the compound [22] and the compound [23] can be carried out under reaction conditions usually employed in a reaction for forming an amide bond. For forming an amide bond, known reaction conditions for the amide bond formation can be employed, for example, (a) a mixed acid anhydride process: a process which comprises reacting the carboxylic acid [22] with an alkyl halo-carboxylate to give a mixed acid anhydride, which is then reacted with the azide [23]; (b) an active ester process: a

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

process which comprises converting the carboxylic acid [22] into an active ester such as p-nitrophenyl ester, N-hydroxysuccinimide ester or 1-hydroxybenzotriazole ester, and then reacting the resultant ester with the azide [23]; (c) a carbodiimide process: a process which comprises condensing the carboxylic acid [22] with the azide [23] in the presence of an activating agent such as dicyclohexyl-carbodiimide or carbonyldiimidazole; and (d) other processes: a process which comprises converting the carboxylic acid [22] into the carboxylic anhydride using a dehydration agent such as acetic anhydride, and then reacting the resultant anhydride with the azide [23], a process which comprises reacting an ester from the carboxylic acid [22] and a lower alcohol with the azide [23] under a high pressure at a high temperature, or a process which comprises reacting an acid halide of the carboxylic acid [22], i.e. acyl halide with the azide [23].

The mixed acid anhydride used in the above mixed acid anhydride process can be obtained by a conventional Schotten-Baumann reaction, and the resultant anhydride is reacted with the azide [23], usully without separating it from the reaction mixture, to prepare the compound [24]. The Schotten-Baumann reaction is carried out in the presence of a basic compound. The basic compound which can be employed in the reaction includes those usually employed in the Schotten-Baumann reaction, for example, organic bases

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN

such as triethylamine, trimethylamine, pyridine, dimethylaniline, N-methylmorpholine, 1,5-diazabicyclo [4,3,0] nonene-5 (DBN), 1,8-diazabicyclo [5,4,0] undecene-7 (DBU) and 1,4-diazabicyclo [2,2,2] octane (DABCO), and inorganic bases such as potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate and sodium hydrogen carbonate.- The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -20°C to around 100°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 50°C, for 5 minutes to 10 hours, preferably 5 minutes to 2 hours. The reaction between the obtained mixed acid anhydride and the azide [23] is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -20°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 50°C, for 5 minutes to 10 hours, preferably for 5 minutes to 5 hours. The mixed acid anhydride process is usually carried out in a solvent. The solvent may be any which is usually employed in the mixed acid anhydride process, including water, halogenated hydrocarbons such as methylene chloride, chloroform and dichloroethane, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran and dimethoxyethane, esters such as methyl acetate and ethyl acetate, ketones such as acetone, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and a mixture thereof. The alkyl halocarboxylate used in the mixed acid anhydride process includes, for example, methyl chloroformate, methyl bromoformate, ethyl chloroformate, ethyl

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

bromoformate, isobutyl chloroformate, and the like. The azide [23] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the carboxylic acid [22].

In case of using the process of reacting an acyl halide with the azide [23], the reaction is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The basic compound used in the reaction may be any known basic compounds, including, for example, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydride, potassium hydride, silver carbonate, and metal alcoholates such as sodium methylate and sodium ethylate, in addition to the basic compound employed in the above Schotten-Baumann reaction. The solvent used in the reaction includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, 3-methoxy-1-butanol, ethyl cellosolve and methyl cellosolve, pyridine, acetone, acetonitrile, the solvents employed in the above mixed acid anhydride process, and a mixture thereof. Although the ratio of the azide [23] and an acyl halide employed is not particularly limited, the acyl halide is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 5 moles, per 1 mole of the azide [23]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -30° to around 180°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 150°C, for about 5 minutes to about 30 hours. The compound [24] thus prepared may be used in a subsequent reaction without separating it from the reaction mixture.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The reaction between the compound [24] and the compound [25] is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for 1 to 15 hours, in a suitable solvent or in the absence a solvent. The compound [25] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [24].

The reaction of converting the compound [26] into the compound [27] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as used in the reaction for removing a phenyl (lower) alkyl or a phenyl (lower) alkoxycarbonyl on the heterocyclic ring attached to the above compound [1].

The reaction of directly converting the compound [22] into the compound [27] is generally referred to as Schmidt reaction, and carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of an acid. The acid employed in the reaction includes mineral acids such as sulfuric acid and hydrochloric acid, phosphorus compounds such as phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus trichloride and phosphorus pentoxide, thionyl chloride, iron [III] chloride, aluminum chloride, stannic chloride, sulfoacetic acid, phosphoric acid, and the like. The solvent includes aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane and carbon tetrachloride, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a

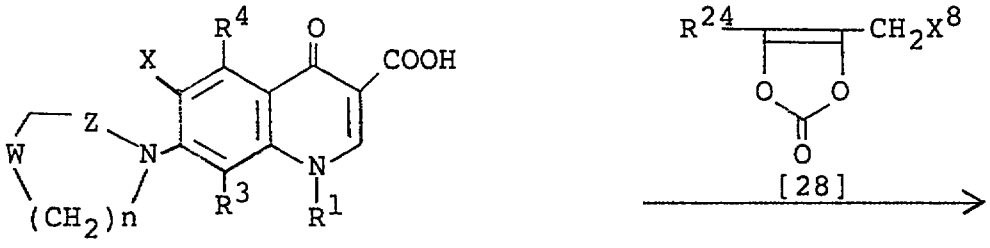
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



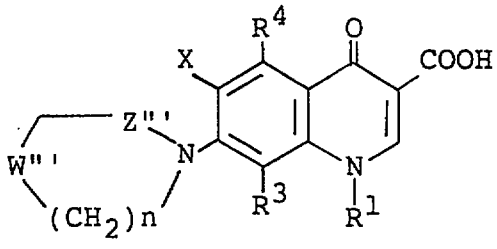
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 100°C, for about 0.5 to about 10 hours. The compound [23a] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [22].

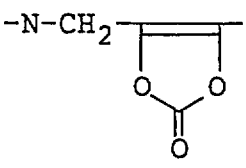
[Reaction scheme-VIII]



[1c]

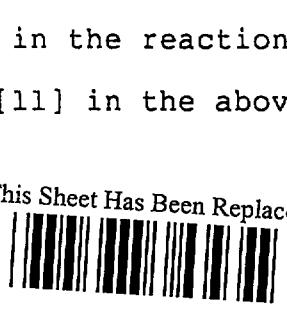


[1h]

wherein R^{24} is phenyl, a lower alkyl or hydrogen atom, X^8 is a halogen atom, either Z"' or W"' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is a group: , and R^1, R^3, R^4, Z, W, X and n are as defined above.

The reaction between the compound [1c] and the compound [28] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [1b] and the compound [11] in the above reaction scheme-II.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

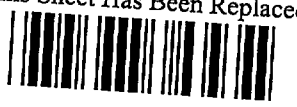


THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Among the compounds [1], the compound in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by (a) a phenyl(lower)alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a (lower) alkoxy, nitro or amino; (b) a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms, a (lower) alkenyl-carbonyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy; (c) a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; (d) an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; (e) a phenyl(lower)alkoxy-carbonyl; (f) an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; (g) phthalide; (h) a 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms; or (i) a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl can be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is not substituted, for example, using the following methods.

The compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by (a) or (e) can be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is not substituted, by treating the former compound in a suitable solvent such as, for example, water, a (lower) alcohol such as methanol, ethanol or isopropanol, an ether such as dioxane or tetra-hydrofuran, acetic acid, or a mixture thereof, in the presence of a catalyst for catalytic reduction such as palladium carbon or palladium black, under a hydrogen pressure of from 1 to 10 atom., at a temperature of from

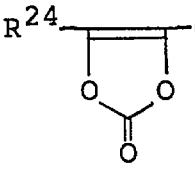
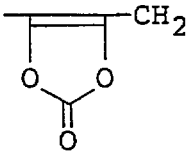
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

around 0°C to around 100°C, for about 0.5 to about 10 hours, wherein a mineral acid such as hydrochloric acid may be added to the reaction mixture, or by heating the former compound in an aqueous hydrobromic acid solution, to remove the phenyl(lower)alkyl such as benzyl or the phenyl(lower)-alkoxycarbonyl.

The compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by any of the substituents (b) to (i) can be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is not substituted, by hydrolyzing the former compound under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [1a].

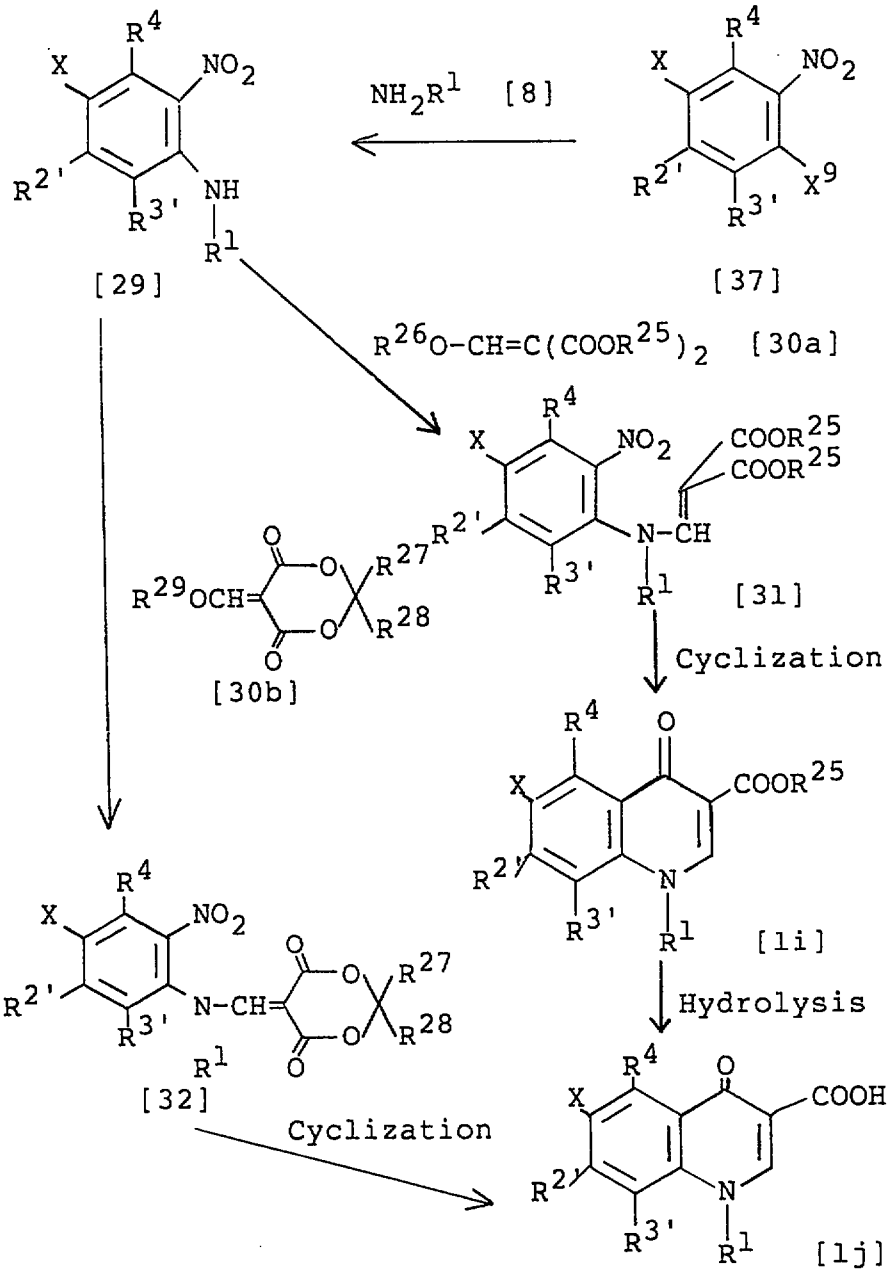
The compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by amino can be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by a group:  by using the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [1c] and the compound [28] in the above reaction scheme-VIII. The compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by a group:  can also be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by amino, by hydrolyzing the former compound under the same

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [1a].

[Reaction scheme-IX]



wherein R^1, $R^{2'}$, R^3, R^4, X^9 and X are as defined above, $R^{3'}$ is a group:

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

$-CHSR^{21}$ (with R^{20} on the CH) wherein R^{20} and R^{21} are as defined above or R^3, and R^{25}, R^{26}, R^{27}, R^{28} and R^{29} are each a (lower) alkyl.

The reaction between the compound [37] and the compound [8] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [1b] and the compound [11] in the above reaction scheme-II.

The reaction between the compound [29] and the compound [30a] or [30b] is carried out in the presence or absence of a solvent, preferably in the absence of a solvent. The solvent used in the reaction includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene and toluene, polar solvents such as acetonitrile, DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and the like. The compound [30a] or [30b] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [29]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from around 60°C to around 200°C, for about 0.5 to about 25 hours.

The cyclization of the compound [31] or [32] can be carried out according to various known methods for the cyclization, including a heating method, a method using an acidic compound such as phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus trichloride, thionyl chloride, conc. sulfuric acid or polyphosphoric acid, and the like.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



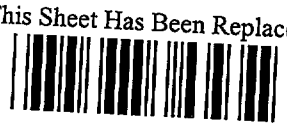
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

In case of using the heating method, the reaction is usually carried out in a high b.p. solvent such as a high b.p. hydrocarbon or a high b.p. ether such as tetralin, diphenyl ether or diethylene glycol dimethyl ether at a temperature of from 100°C to 250°C, preferably from 150°C to 200°C. In case of using the method with an acidic compound, the acidic compound is usually used in an equimolar to a large excess amount, preferably 10 to 20 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [31] or [32]. The reaction is usually carried out in the presence or absence of a suitable solvent at a temperature of from room temperature to 150°C for about 0.1 to about 6 hours. The solvent includes acid anhydrides such as acetic anhydride in addition to the solvents employed in the cyclization of the above compound [9].

The hydrolysis of the compound [1i] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the compound [1a] in the above reaction scheme-I.

The compound [1j] in which $R^{3'}$ is a group: $-\overset{R^{20}}{\underset{|}{C}}HSR^{21}$ can be coverted into the corresponding compound in which $R^{3'}$ is $-CH_2R^{20}$ by treating the former compound under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaciton wherein the compound [18] is converted into the compound [19] in the above reaction scheme-V.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

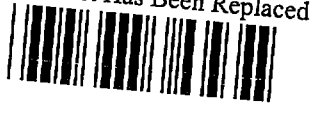


THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The compound [1j] in which $R^{2'}$ is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring having a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl on the secondary nitrogen atom can be converted into the corresponding compound in which $R^{2'}$ is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring having no substituent on the secondary nitrogen atom by treating the former compound under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the compound [1a] in the above reaction scheme-I.

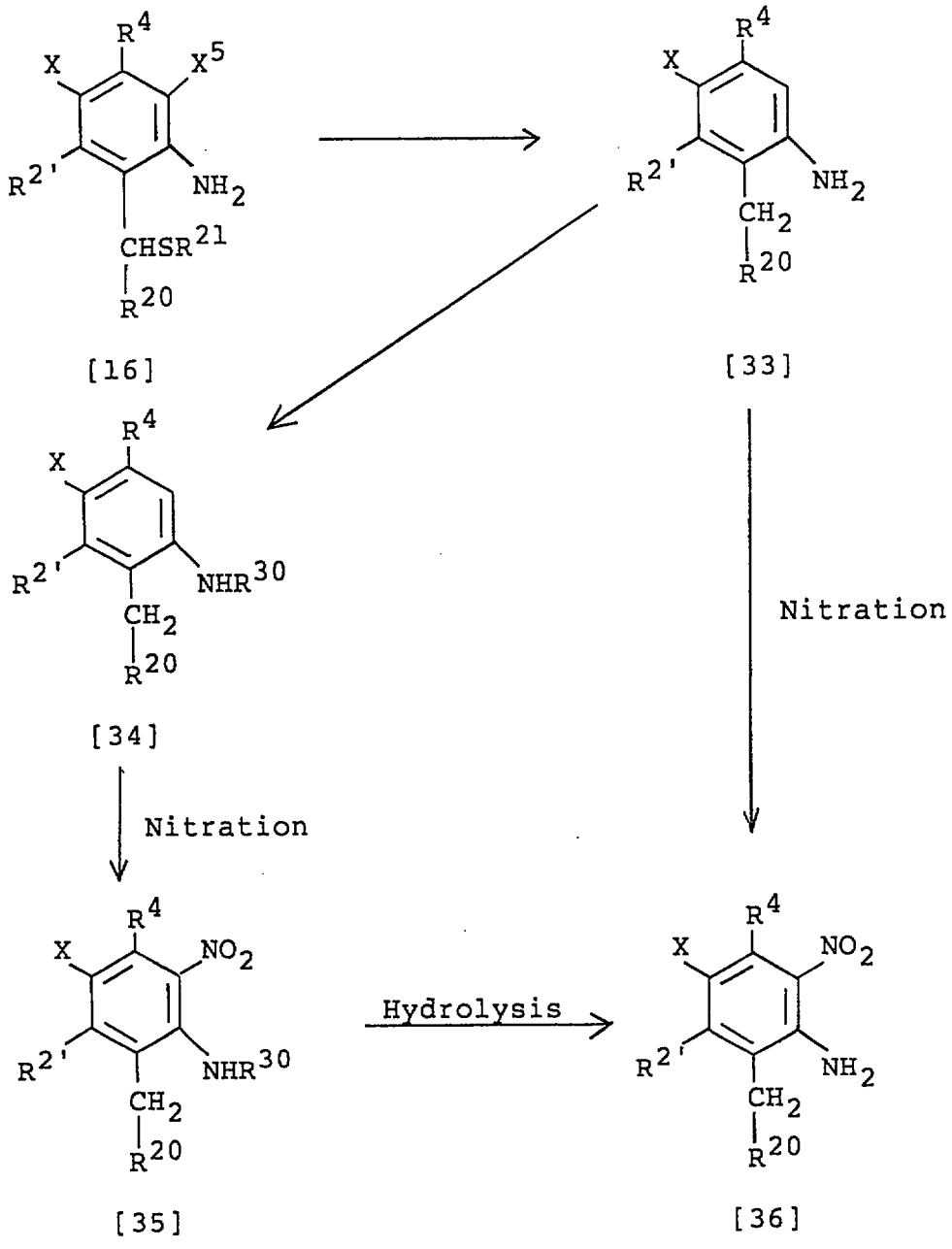
The compound [29] employed as the starting material in the above reaciton scheme-IX can be prepared, for example, by the processes as shown in the following reaction schemes-X to XIII.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



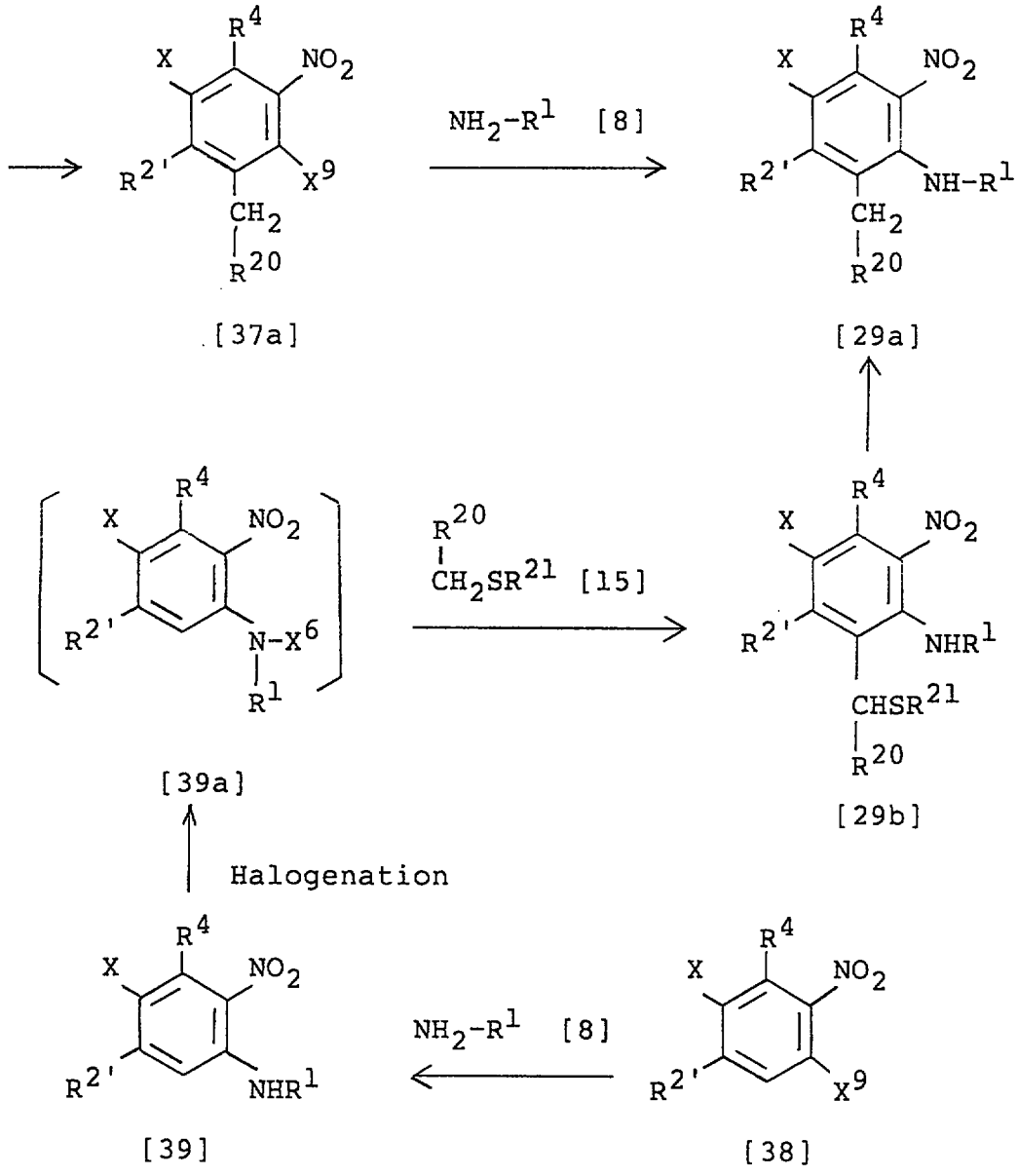
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

[Reaction scheme-X]



This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED



wherein R^1, $R^{2'}$, R^{20}, R^{21}, X, X^5 and X^6 are as defined above, R^{30} is a (lower) alkanoyl, and X^9 is a halogen atom.

The desulfurization of the compound [16] or [29b] can be carried out under the same reaciton conditions as employed in the desulfurization of the above compound [18].

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The reaction of converting the compound [33] into the compound [34] is carried out in the presence of a (lower) alkanoylating agent, which includes a (lower) alkanoic acid such as formic acid, acetic acid or propionic acid, a (lower) alkanoic acid anhydride such as acetic anhydride, a (lower) alkanoic acid halide such as acetyl chloride or propionyl bromide, or the like. In case of using an acid anhydride or an acid halide as the (lower) alkanoylating agent, a basic compound may also be employed. The basic compound includes, for example, alkali metals such as metallic sodium and metallic potassium; hydroxides, carbonates or hydrogen carbonates of these alkali metals; organic bases such as pyridine and piperidine, and the like. The reaction can be carried out in either the presence or the absence of a solvent, usually in the presence of a suitable solvent. The solvent includes, for example, ketones such as acetone and methyl ethyl ketone, ethers such as diethyl ether and dioxane, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, acetic acid, acetic anhydride, water, pyridine, and the like. The (lower) alkanoylating agent is used in an amount of at least 1 mole per 1 mole of the compound [33], usually in an equimolar to a large excess amount. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 100°C, for about 5 minutes to about 15 hours. In case of using a

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



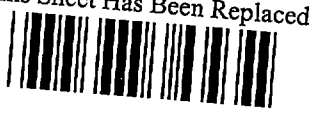
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

(lower) alkanoic acid as the (lower) alkanoylating agent, a dehydrating agent is preferably employed, which includes mineral acids such as sulfuric acid and hydrochloric acid, sulfonic acids such as p-toluenesulfonic acid, benzene-sulfonic acid and ethanesulfonic acid and the like, and the reaction is preferably carried out at a temperature of from around 50°C to around 120°C.

The nitration of the compound [33] or [34] is carried out by treating the said compound with a nitrating agent such as fuming nitric acid, concd. nitric acid, a mixed acid (e.g. nitric acid plus sulfuric acid, fuming sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid or acetic anhydride, etc.), an alkali metal nitrate plus sulfuric acid, an anhydride of nitric acid and an organic acid such as acetyl nitrate or benzoyl nitrate, nitrogen tetraoxide, nitric acid plus mercury nitrate, nitrate of acetone cyanohydrin, an alkyl nitrate plus sulfuric acid or a polyphosphoric acid, without a solvent or in the presenece of a solvent such as acetic acid, acetic anhydride or sulfuric acid. The nitrating agent is preferably used in an amount of 1 to 5 moles per 1 mole of the compound [33] or [34]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -10°C to around 70°C for about 10 minutes to about 24 hours.

The hydrolysis of the compound [35] is carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [1a].

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The reaction between the compound [37a] or [38] and the compound [8] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [1b] and the compound [11] in the above reaction scheme-II.

The halogenation of the compound [39] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the halogenation of the above compound [14].

The reaction of converting the compound [29b] into the compound [29a] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reaction of converting the compound [18] into the compound [19].

The reaction between the compound [39a] and the compound [15] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [14a] and the compound [15].

The reaction of converting the compound [36] into the compound [37] can be carried out by converting the former compound into a diazonium salt thereof using sodium nitrite and an acid such as sulfuric acid, hydrochloric acid hydrobromic acid or boron fluoride in a solvent such as a (lower) alkanoic acid such as acetic acid or water, and then reacting the diazonium salt with a copper powder or a copper halide such as, for example, cuprous bromide, cuprous chloride or cupric chloride in the presence of a hydrohalogenic acid such as, for example, hydrobromic acid or

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

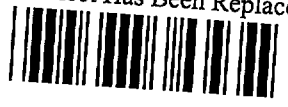


THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

hydrochloric acid, or reacting with potassium iodide in the presence or absence of a copper powder, preferably with a copper halide in the presence of a hydrohalogenic acid. The sodium nitrite is usually used in an amount of 1 to 2 moles, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [36], and the copper halide is usually used in an amount of 1 to 5 moles, preferably 1 to 4 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [36]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -20°C to around 100°C, preferably from around -5°C to around 100°C, for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours.

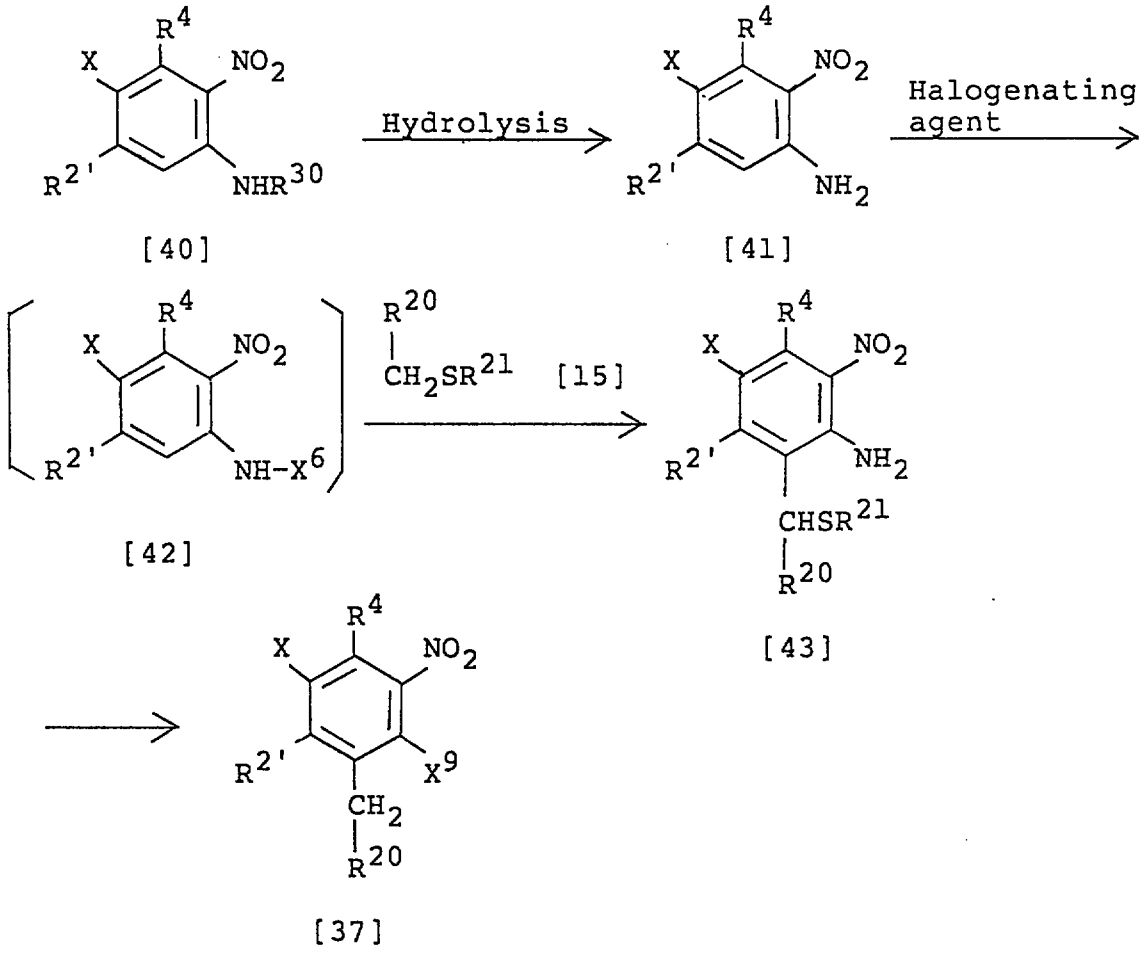
The halogen atoms of $R^{2'}$ and X^{9} in the compound [37a], the compound [1a], the compound [1a'] and the compound [45] described below can be converted into each other.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

[Reaction scheme-XI]



wherein $R^{2'}$, R^{20}, R^{21}, R^{30}, X, X^6 and X^9 are as defined above.

The hydrolysis of the compound [40] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [1a].

The halogenation of the compound [41] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the halogenation of the compound [14] in the above reaction scheme-V.

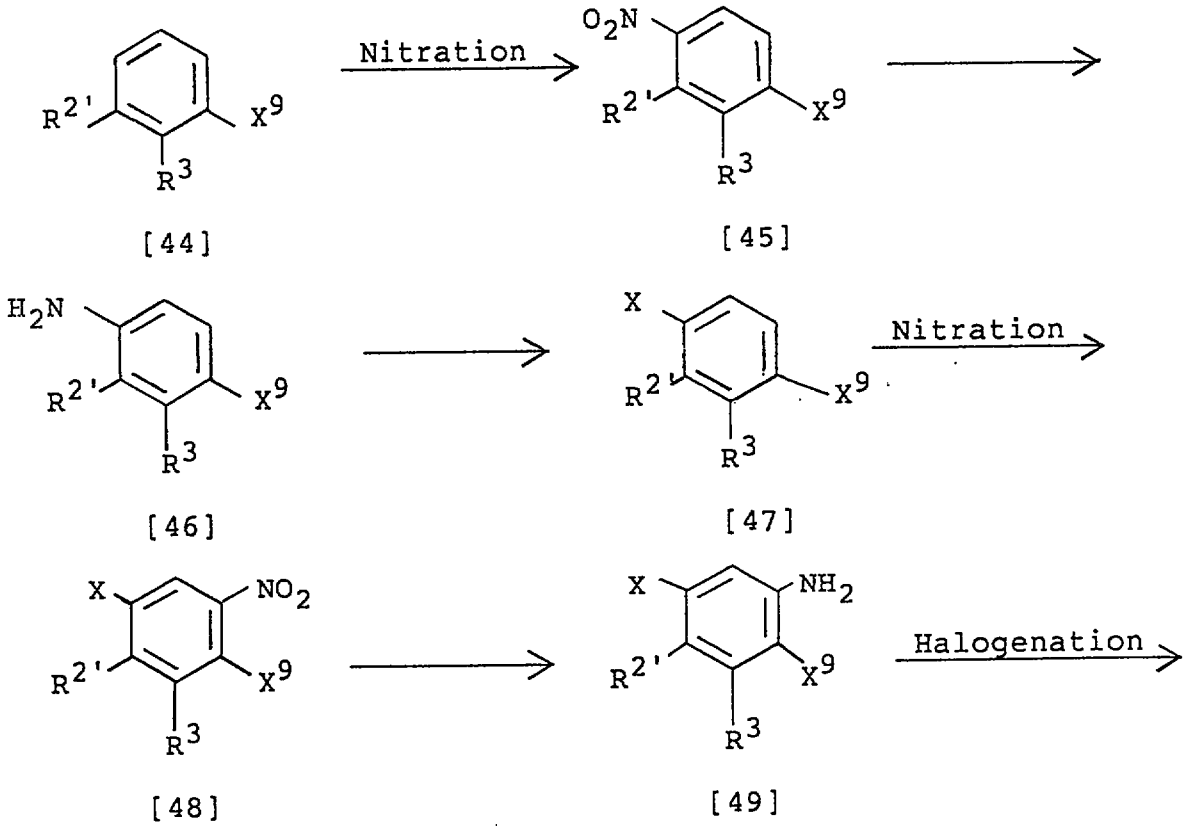
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The reaction between the compound [42] and the compound [15] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [14a] and the compound [15].

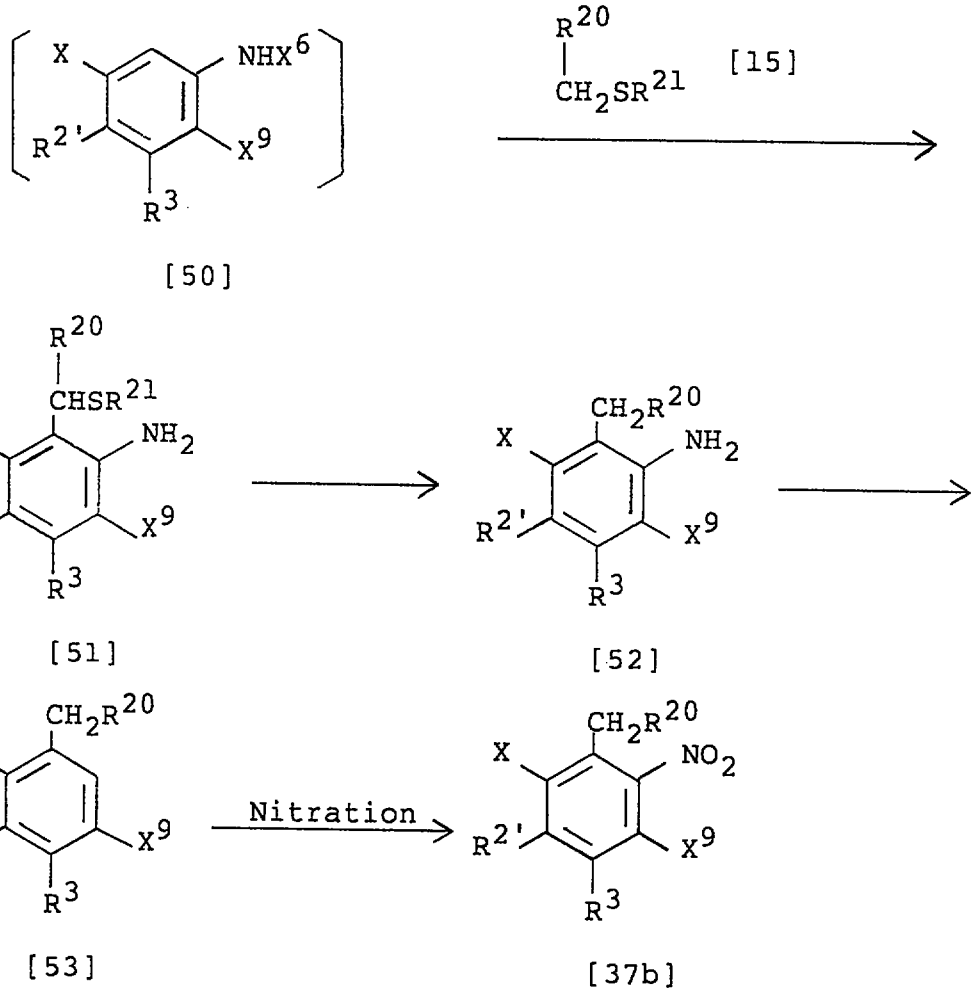
The desulfurization of the compound [43] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the desulfurization of the compound [18] in the above reaction scheme-V.

[Reaction scheme-XII]



This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

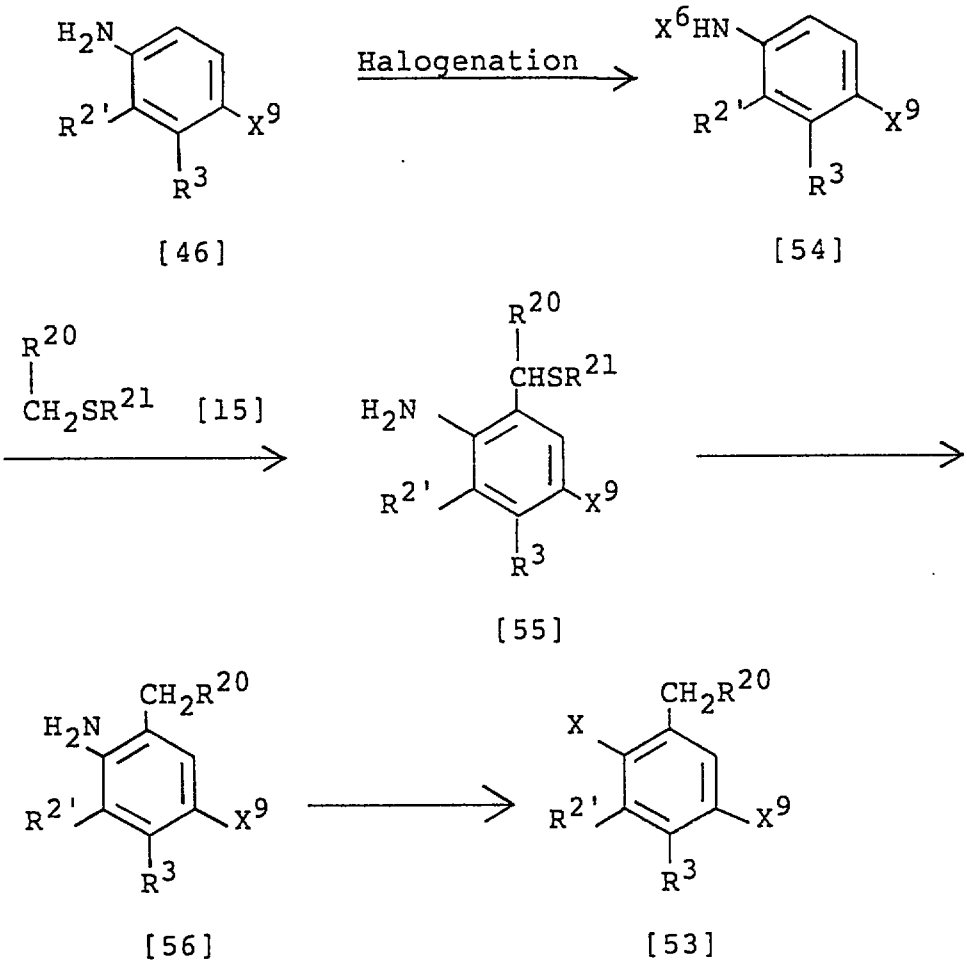


wherein $R^{2'}$, R^3, X^6, X^9, R^{20} and R^{21} are as defined above.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

[Reaction scheme-XIII]



wherein $R^{2'}$, R^3, X^6, X^9, R^{20} and R^{21} are as defined above.

The nitration of each compound [44], [47] or [53] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the nitration of the compound [33] or [34].

The reduction of the compound [45] or [48] is usually carried out by (i) reducing the compound with a catalyst for catalytic reduction in a suitable solvent, or by (ii) reducing the compound with a reducing agent such as a mixture of metal or metal salt with an acid or a mixture

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

of metal or metal salt with hydroxide, sulfide or ammonium salt of alkali metal in a suitable innert solvent. In case of the process (i) of the catalytic reduction, the solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, water, acetic acid, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and iso-propanol, hydrocarbons such as hexane and cyclohexane, ethers such as diethylene glycol dimethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran and diethyl ether, esters such as ethyl acetate and methyl acetate, aprotic polar solvent such as N,N-dimethyl formamide, and the like. The catalyst for catalytic reduction employed in the reaction includes, for example, palladium, palladium black, palladium carbon, platinum, platinum oxide, copper chromite, Raney nickel, and the like. The catalyst is usually used in an amount of from 0.02 to 1.00 times weight based on the compound [45] or [48]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -20°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to room temperature at a hydrogen pressure of from 1 to 10 atm. for about 0.5 to about 10 hours. In case of using the process (ii), the employed reducing agent includes a mixture of iron, zinc, tin or tin (II) chloride with a mineral acid such as hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid, a mixture of iron, iron (II) sulfate, zinc or tin with alkali metal hydroxide such as sodium hydroxide, sulfate such as ammonium sulfate, aqueous amminia or ammonium chloride, and the like. The innert solvent includes, for example, water,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

acetic acid, methanol, ethanol, dioxane and the like. The reaction conditions of the above reduction may vary depending on a kind of the reducing agent employed. For example, the reaction is advantageously carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to room temperature for about 0.5 to about 10 hours when the reducing agent is a combination of tin (II) chloride and hydrochloric acid. The reducing agent is usually employed in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 5 moles per 1 mole of the starting compound.

The halogenation of the compound [46] or [49] and the subsequent reaction with the compound [15] can be carried out in the same reaction conditions as employed in the halogenation of the above compound [14] and the subsequent reaction with the compound [15].

The desulfurization of the compound [55] or [51] for preparing the compound [56] or [52] respectively can be carried out in the same reaction conditions as employed in the desulfurization of the above compound [18].

The reaction of converting the compound [46] or [56] into the compound [47] or [53] respectively is carried out by reacting the starting compound with nitrite of metal such as sodium nitrite or potassium nitrite in a solvent such as water in the presence of an acid to give a diazonium salt, which is then heated at from around 150°C to around 200°C, or heated at from room temperature to around 150°C in

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

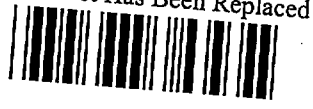


THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

the presence of copper (I) bromide - hydrobromic acid, copper (I) chloride - hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, potassium iodide, or an acid such as hydrochloric acid plus copper powder. The acid employed in the reaction includes, for example, hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, tetrafluoroboric acid, hexafluorophosphoric acid, and the like. The acid and the nitrate of metal are usually used in an amount of from 1 to 5 moles, preferably from 1 to 3 moles, and of at least 1 mole, preferably from 1 to 1.5, moles, respectively, per 1 mole of the compound [46] or [56]. The amount of the acid employed in heating the obtained diazonium salt is usually at least 1 moles, preferably from 1 to 1.5 moles per 1 mole of the compound [56].

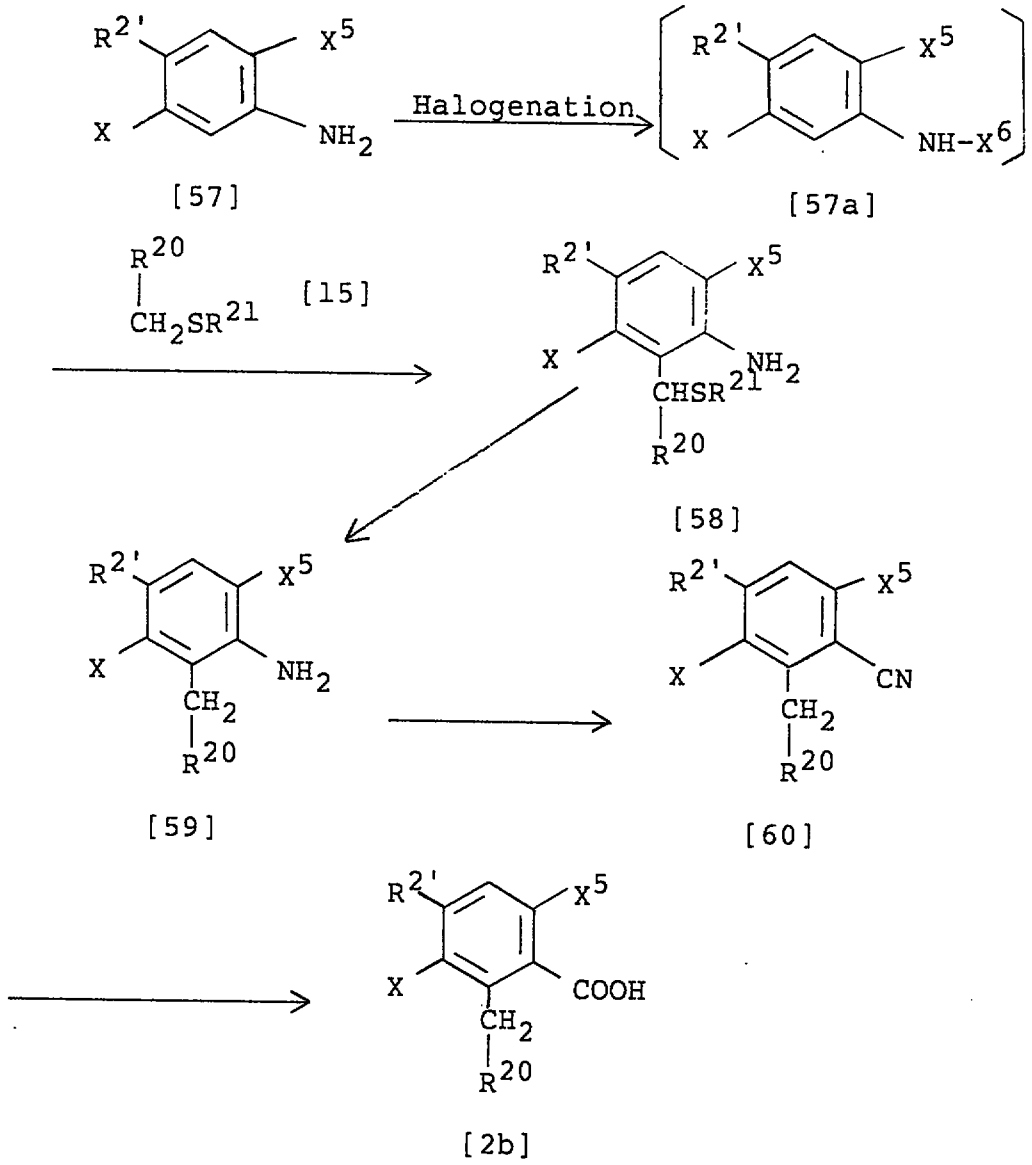
The deamination of the compound [52] to prepare the compound [53] is carried out by, for example, reacting the compound [52] with t-butyl nitrite in the presence of a suitable solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, dimethyl formamide, dimethyl sulfoxide, hexamethylphosphoric acid triamide, and the like. The t-butyl nitrite is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably from 1 to 2 moles per 1 mole of the compound [52]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C for about 0.1 to 5 hours.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

[Reaction scheme-XIV]



wherein $R^{2'}$, X, X^5, X^6, R^{20} and R^{21} are as defined above.

The reaction between the compound [57] and the halogenating agent and the subsequent reaction with the compound [15] are carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the above compound [14] and the halogenating agent and the subsequent reaction with the compound [15].

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The desulfurization of the compound [58] to prepare the compound [59] is carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the desulfurization of the compound [18].

The reaction of converting the compound [59] into the compound [60] is carried out by treating the former compound under the same reacion conditions as employed in the reaction of converting the compound [46] or [56] into the diazonium salt to prepare diazonium salt, which is then reacted with MCN, wherein M is as defined above, in the presence of a copper compound such as copper powder or copper sulfate. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 100°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 70°C for about 0.5 to about 5 hours. The MCN is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 10 moles per 1 mole of the compound [59].

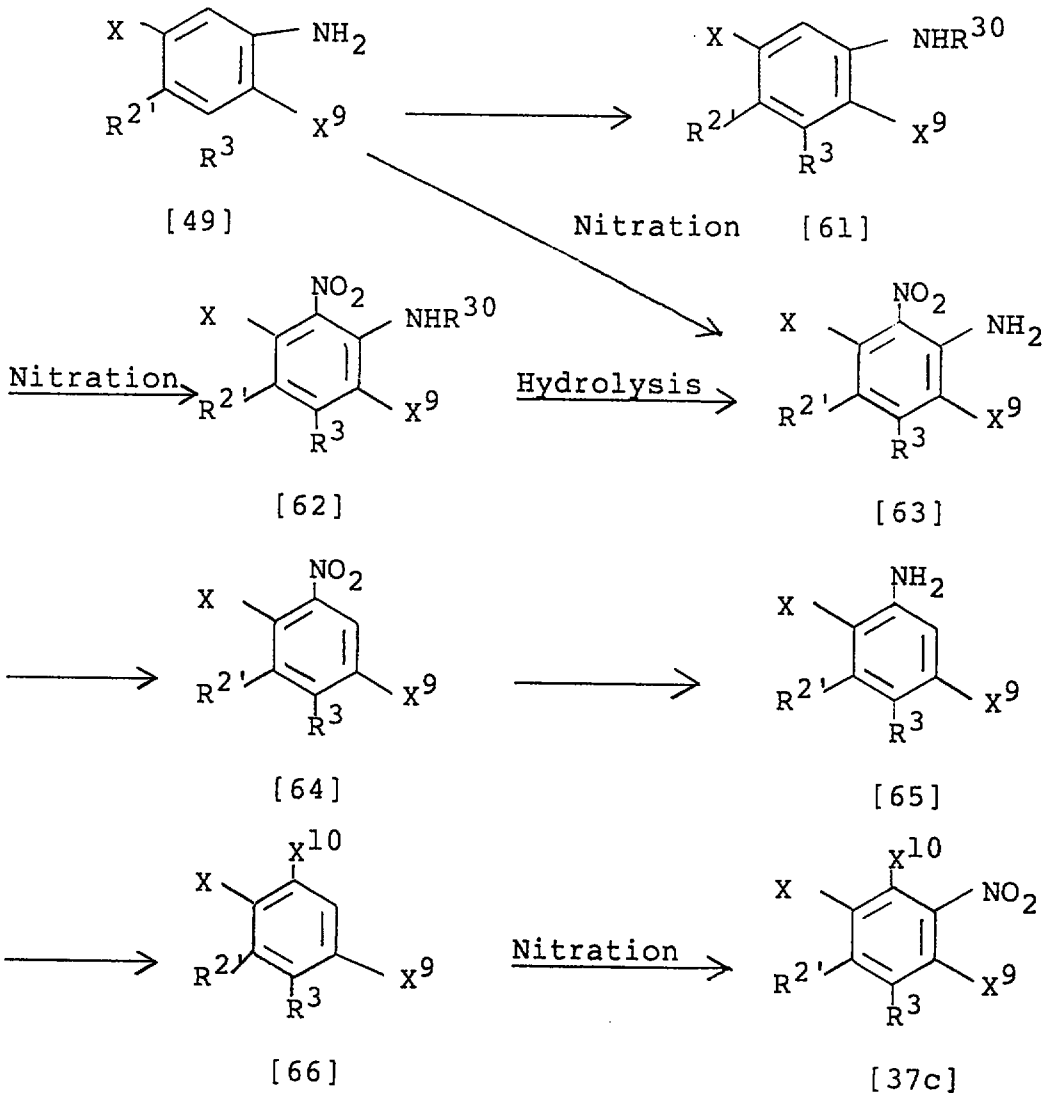
The hydrolysis of the compound [60] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [20].

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

[Reaction scheme-XV]



wherein $R^{2'}$, R^3, X, X^9, and R^{30} are as defined above and X^{10} is a halogen atom.

The reaction of converting the compound [49] into the compound [61] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reaction of converting the compound [33] into the compound [34].

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The nitration of the compound [49], [61] or [66] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above nitration of the compoud [33] or [34].

The hydrolysis of the compound [62] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above hydrolysis of the compound [1a].

The deamination of the compound [63] to prepare the compound [64] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above deamination of the compound [52].

The reduction of the compound [64] can be carried out in the same reacion conditions as employed in the above reduction of the compound [45] or [48].

The reaction of converting the compound [65] into the compound [66] can be carried out in the same manner as in the above reaction of converting the compound [46] or [56] into the compound [47] or [53].

The compounds [3], [5], [7], [9], [1a], [1a'], [1b'], [29], [31] and [32], wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having a substituent of oxo, can be reduced to the corresponding compounds, wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having a substituent of hydroxy. The reduction can be carried out with a hydrogenating reducing agent in the presence of a suitable solvent. The reducing agent includes, for example, sodium

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

borohydride, lithium aluminum hydride, diborane and the like. The reducing agent is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 5 moles per 1 mole of the starting material to be reduced. The solvent includes, for example, water, a (lower) alcohol such as methanol, ethanol or isopropanol, an ether such as tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether or diglyme, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -60°C to 50°C, preferably from around -30°C to room temperature for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours. In case of using lithium aluminum hydride or diborane as the reducing agent, non-aqueous solvent is preferably employed such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran or diglyme.

In case of using sodium borohydride as the reducing agent, an inorganic base such as sodium hydroxide can also be added to the reaction system.

The compounds wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having a substituent selected from the group consisiting of a (lower) alkyl having at least 1 of a (lower) alkanoylamino and a (lower) alkoxycarbonylamino, a (lower) alkanoylamino and a (lower) alkoxycarbonylamino can be hydrolized into the corresponding compounds wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having a subsitituent selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl having at least one amino and amino. The hydrolysis

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

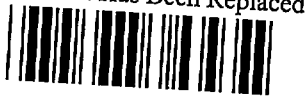
can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the compound [1a] in the above reaction scheme-I.

The compounds wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having at least one -NH- in the ring can be converted into the compounds wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring substituted by at least one (lower) alkanoyl, by reacting the former compounds under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction of converting the compound [33] into the compound [34] in the above reaction scheme-X.

The compounds [3], [5], [7], [9], [1a], [1a'], [1b], [1b'], [29], [31] and [32] wherein R^1 is a phenyl having at least one (lower) alkoxy on the phenyl ring can be converted into the corresponding compounds wherein R^1 is a phenyl having at least one hydroxy on the phenyl ring, by heating the former compounds in an aqueous hydrobromic acid solution.

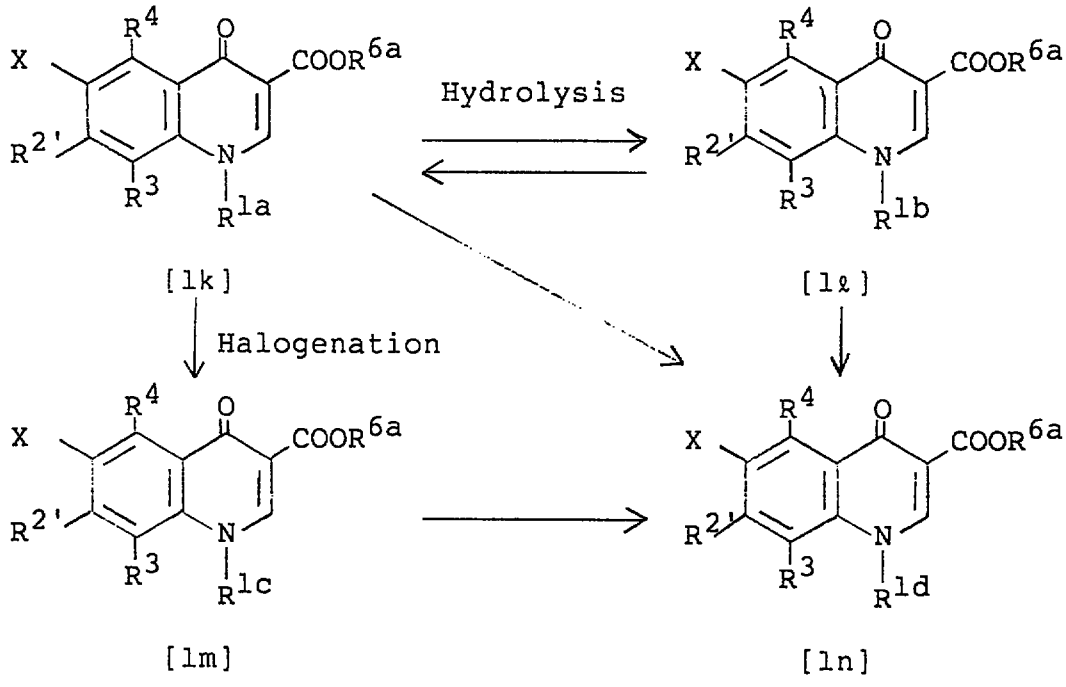
The compound [1] wherein R^3 and/or R^4 is a halogen atom can be converted into the corresponding compound [1] wherein R^3 and/or R^4 is hydroxy, by treating the former compound in water and a basic compound such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or barium hydroxide at from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C for about 1 to 15 hours.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

[Reaction scheme-XVI]



wherein $R^{2'}$, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined above, and R^{6a} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^{1a} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of hydroxy, R^{1b} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of a (lower) alkanoyloxy, R^{1c} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of halogen atoms and R^{1d} is a (lower) alkenyl.

The reaction of converting the compound [1k] into the compound [1ℓ] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reaction of converting the compound [33] into the compound [34].

The hydrolysis of the compound [1ℓ] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above hydrolysis of the compound [1a].

The halogenation of the compound [1k] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above halogenation of the compound [2].

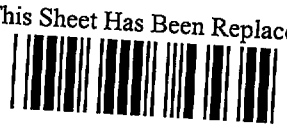
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

The reaction of converting the compound [1k] into the compound [1n] is carried out in a suitable solvent or without a solvent in the presence of a hydrohalogenic acid such as hydochloric acid or hydrobromic acid, an inorganic acid such as sulfuric acid, boric acid or potassium hydrogensulfate, or an organic acid such as oxalic acid. The solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, water, an ether such as dioxane, tetrahydrofuran or diethyl ether, a halogenated hydrocarbon such as dichloromethane, chloroform or carbon tetrachloride, an aromatic hydrocarbon such as benzene, toluene or xylene, or a mixture thereof. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 50°C to around 350°C, preferably from around 80°C to around 300°C for about 10 minutes to about 10 hours.

The reaction of converting the compound [1ℓ] into the compound [1n] is carried out in a suitable solvent or without a solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction may be any which is exemplified in the above reaction of converting the compound [1k] into the compound [1n]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C for about 10 minutes to about 10 hours. The reaction may also be conducted in the presence of an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, lithium

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

salt such as lithium chloride or lithium carbonate, or an organic base such as DBU, pyridine, triethanol amine or triethyl amine.

The reaction of converting the compound [1m] into the compound [1n] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The solvent and the basic compound employed in the reaction may be any which is exemplified in the above reaction of converting the compound [1ℓ] into the compound [1n]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C for about 1 to about 10 hours.

The compounds [1k], [1ℓ], [1m] and [1n] wherein R^{6a} is a (lower) alkyl can be converted into the corresponding compounds wherein R^{6a} is hydrogen atom, by hydrolyzing the former compounds under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above hydrolysis of the compound [1a].

In the hydrolysis of the compound [1ℓ] wherein R^{6a} is a (lower) alkyl, R^{6a} is also hydolyzed in some cases to give the compound [1ℓ] wherein R^{6a} is hydrogen atom, which can easily be separated from the reaction mixture.

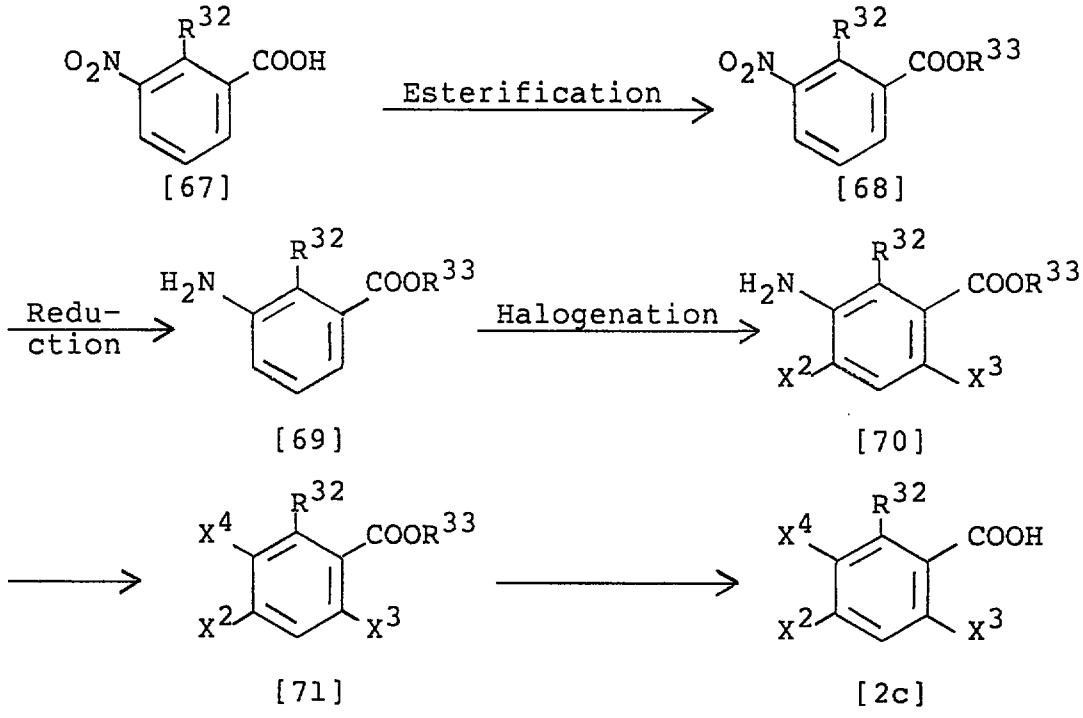
In the halogeanation of the compound [1k] wherein R^{6a} is hydrogen atom, the carboxy in the compound is also halogenated in some cases but this one can be easily separated from the reaction mixture.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

[Reaction scheme-XVII]



Wherein X^2, X^3 and X^4 are as defined above, R^{32} and R^{33} each are a (lower) alkyl.

The esterification of the compound [67] is carried out in a (lower) alcohol such as methanol, ethanol or isopropanol in the presence of a halogenating agent such as an acid such as hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid, thionyl chloride, phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride or phosphorus trichloride. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to 150°C, preferably from around 50°C to around 100°C for about 1 to 10 hours.

The reduction of the compound [68] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reduction of the compound [45] or [48].

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

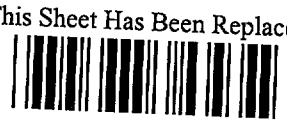
The halogenation of the compound [69] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a halogenating agent. The halogenating agent employed in the reaction includes a halogen such as bromine or chlorine, iodine chloride, sulufuryl chloride, N-halogenosuccinimide such as N-bromosuccinimide or N-chlorosuccinimide. The halogenating agent is usually used in an amount of from 1 to 10 moles, preferably from 1 to 5 moles per 1 mole of the compound [69]. The solvent includes a halogenated hydrocarbon such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform or carbon tetrachloride, a (lower) alkanoic acid such as acetic acid or propionic acid, water and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around the boiling point of the solvent, preferably from around 0°C to around 40°C for about 0.1 to about 10 hours.

The reaction of converting the compound [70] into the compound [71] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reaction of converting the compound [46] or [56] into the compoud [47] or [53].

The hydrolysis of the compound [71] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above hydrolysis of the compound [1a].

The compounds [1a] in the reaction scheme-I and the compounds [1b] and [1b'] in the reaction scheme-II are useful not only as an intermediate for preparing the compound [1] of the present invention with antimicrobial

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

activities, but also as an antimicrobial agent because they also have antimicrobial activities.

The compound [1] of the present invention can easily be converted into a salt thereof by treaing with a pharmaceutically acceptable acid or base. The acid includes inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid and hydrobromic acid and organic acids such as oxalic acid, maleic acid, fumaric acid, malic acid, tartaric acid, citric acid, benzoic acid, lactic acid, methanesulfonic acid and propionic acid. The base includes sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, calcium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, and the like.

The compound thus obtained can easily be isolated and purified by conventional methods, such as, for example, extraction with solvents, dilution method, recrystallization, column chromatography and preparative thin layer chromatography.

The compound [1] of the present invention or salts thereof show an excellent antimicrobial activity against mycoplasma, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, anaerobic bacteria, resistant cells against various antimicrobials, clinically isolated bacteria, and gram negative and gram positive bacteria such as Enterococcus faecalis and Staphylococcus pyogenes and hence are useful as an antimicrobial agent for the treatment of diseases induced by these microorganisms.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

These compounds also show low toxicity and less side effect and are characteristic in good absorbability and in sustained activity. Moreover, the compounds are highly excreted via urine and hence are useful for the treatment of urinary infectious diseases, and further because of easy excretion via bile, they are also useful for the treatment of intestinal infectious diseases.

Among the compounds [1] of the present invention, the preferable ones are the compounds wherein R^1 is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, X is chlorine or fluorine atom, most preferably fluorine atom, R^4 is a (lower) alkyl such as, preferably methyl or ethyl, most preferably methyl, and R^3 is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom, most preferably hydrogen atom, with a (lower) alkyl being preferably methyl or ethyl, most preferably methyl, and a halogen atom being preferably chlorine atom or fluorine atom, most preferably fluorine atom.

The absorbability of the compounds of the present invention in the living body can be increased by converting them into the corresponding salt such as, for example, lactate or hydrochloride.

The compounds of the present invention are usually used in the form of a usual pharmaceutical preparation. The pharmaceutical preparation can be prepared in admixture with conventional pharmaceutically acceptable diluents or carriers, such as fillers, bulking agents, binding agents,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

wetting agents, disintegrators, surfactants and lubricating agents. The pharmaceutical preparation includes various preparations suitable for treatment of the diseases, for example, tablets, pills, powders, solutions, suspensions, emulsions, granules, capsules, suppositories, injections such as solutions and suspensions, and the like. In the preparation of tablets, there may be used any conventional carriers, for example, excepients such as lactose, white sugar, sodium chloride, glucose, urea, starches, calcium carbonate, kaolin, crystalline cellulose and silicate, binding agents such as water, ethanol, propanol, simple syrup, glucose solution, starch solution, gelatin solution, carboxymethyl cellulose, shellac, methyl cellulose, potassium phosphate and polyvinylpyrrolidone, disintegrators such as dry starch, sodium alginate, agar powder, laminaran powder, sodium hydrogen carbonate, calcium carbonate, polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, sodium laurylsulfate, stearic monoglyceride, starches and lactose, disintegration inhibitors such as white sugar, stearin, cacao butter and hydrogenated oils, absorption promoters such as quaternary ammonium salts and sodium laurylsulfate, wetting agents such as glycerin and starches, adsorbents such as starches, lactose, kaolin, bentonite and colloidal silicates, rublicants such as purified talc, stearates, boric acid powder and polyethylene glycol, and the like. The tablets may also be coated with conventional coating

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

agents, for example, may be in the form of a sugar coated tablet, a gelatin-coated tablets, an enteric coating tablet, a film coating tablet, or a double or multiple layers tablet. In the preparation of pills, there may be used conventional carries, including excipients such as glucose, lactose, starches, cacao butter, hydrogenated vegetable oils, kaolin and talc, binding agents such as gum arabic powder, tragacanth powder, gelatin and ethanol, disintegrators such as laminaran and agar, and the like. In the preparation of suppositories, there may be used conventional carriers, such as, for example, polyethylene glycol, cacao butter, higher alcohols, higher alcohol esters, gelatin and semi-synthetized glycerides. In the preparation of injections, the solutions, emulsions or suspensions of the compounds are sterilized and are preferably made isotonic with the body liquid. These solutions, emulsions and suspensions are prepared by admixing the active compound with a conventional diluent, such as water, aqueous lactic acid solution, ethyl alcohol, propylene glycol, ethoxylated isostearyl alcohol, polyoxylated isostearyl alcohol or polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters. The preparations may also be incorporated with sodium chloride, glucose or glycerin in an amount sufficient to make them isotonic with the body liquid. The preparations may also be incorported with conventional solubilizers, buffering agents, anesthetizing

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



agents, and further, with coloring agents, preservatives, perfumes, flavors, sweetening agents, and other medicaments. The preparations in the form of a paste, cream or gel may be prepared by using as a diluent white vaseline, paraffin, glycerin, cellulose derivatives, polyethylene glycol, silicone, bentonite, or the like. When the compound of the active ingredient precipitates in the injection, an acid such as, for example, methanesulfonic acid, propionic acid, hydrochloric acid, succinic acid or lactic acid may be added to the injection as required to preserve the injection in a stable solution.

The pharmaceutical preparation of the present invention may also be in the form of an infusable or injectable solution containing the above compound [1] or a salt thereof such as lactate and an acid not producing a precipitate. The acid not producing a precipitate includes, for example, lactic acid, methanesulfonic acid, propionic acid, hydrochloric acid, succinic acid, and the like, preferably lactic acid. In case of using lactic acid, the acid is usually used in an amount of from around 0.1 to around 10% by weight, preferably from arond 0.5 to around 2% by weight, based on the weight of the above infusable or injectable solution. In case of using an acid other than lactic acid, the acid is usually used in an amount of from around 0.05 to around 4% by weight, preferably from around 0.3 to around 2% by weight, based on the weight of the above

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

solution. The above infusable or injectable solution may optionally be added with conventional additives, which includes, for example, a thickener, an absorption promoter or inhibitor, a crystallization inhibitor, a complex-forming agent, an antioxidant, an isotonicity-giving agent, or a hydrating agent, and the like. The pH of the solution can properly be adjusted by adding an alkali such as sodium hydroxide, and is usually adjusted within the range of from 2.5 to 7. The infusable or injectable solution thus prepared has an excellent stability, and can be stored and preserved for a long time with retaining the solution state.

The active compounds [1] or salts thereof may be contained in any amount in the preparations, and are usually contained in an amount of from 1 to 70 % by weight based on the whole weight of the preparations.

The pharmaceutical preparations of the present invention can be administered in any methods. Suitable method for administration may be selected in accordance with the preparation form, age and sex of patients, severity of the diseases, and the like. For instance, tablets, pills, solutions, suspensions, emulsions, granules and capsules are administered in oral route. In case of injection, it is administered intravenously in a single form or together with an auxiliary liquid such as glucose or amino acid solution. The injections may also be administered in intramuscular, intracutaneous, subcutaneous, or intra-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

peritoneal route. Suppositories are administered in intra-rectal route.

The dosage of the pharmaceutical preparations of the present invention may vary according to administration methods, age and sex of patients, severity of the diseases, and the like, usually in the range of about 0.2 to about 100 mg of the active compound [1] or a salt thereof per 1 kg body weight of the patient per day. The preparation is usually administered by dividing into 2 to 4 times per day.

The present invention is illustrated by the following Reference Examples, Examples, Experiments and Preparations. It is to be understood that the present invention is not limited to these Examples or Experiments and various changes and modifications can be made without departing from the scope and spirit of the present invention.

Reference Example 1

To 2,6-dichlorotoluene (200 g) is added dropwise fuming nitric acid (d=1.52, 206 ml) at 25° to 30°C. After stirring for 30 minutes at room temperature, the mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with an aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and then dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,6-dichloro-3-nitrotoluene as yellow crystals (253.2 g).

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.57 (3H, s), 7.42 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 7.58 (1H, d, J=7 Hz)

Reference Example 2

A mixture of 2,6-dichloro-3-nitrotoluene (253.2 g), anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide (1.2 ℓ), Kurocat F (KF) (357 g) and 18-crown-6 (2.5 g) is stirred at 160°C for 6 hours. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is distilled under reduced pressure to give 2,6-difluoro-3-nitrotoluene (96.1 g), boiling point: 110-112°C/18 mmHg.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.30 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 7.01 (1H, ddd, J=1.8 Hz, 7.7 Hz, 9.5 Hz), 7.97 (1H, dt, J=5.8 Hz, 8.7 Hz)

Reference Example 3

To acetic acid (1.2 ℓ) are added 5 % Pd-C (24 g) and 2,6-difluoro-3-nitrotoluene (238.7 g) and the mixture is subjected to catalytic reduction at room temperature under 4.5 atoms. The 5 % Pd-C is filtered off and the acetic acid is distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue is poured into ice-water, neutralized, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is distilled under reduced pressure to give 2,4-difluoro-3-methylaniline (138 g), colorless oils, b.p.: 75°C/11 mmHg.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.17 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 3.3-3.7(2H, brs), 6.4-6.7 (2H, m)

Reference Example 4

To 2,4-difluoro-3-methylaniline (20 g) are added 42 % tetrafluoroboric acid (56 ml) and water (28 ml) under ice cooling and thereto a solution of sodium nitrite (10 g) in water (20 ml) is added dropwise at below 10°C. After dropwise addition, the mixture is stirred at 0°C for 15 minutes and the formed crystals are filtered, which is washed with a mixture of ethanol - diethyl ether (1:2), then with diethyl ether, followed by drying under reduced pressure to give 2,4-difluoro-3-methylbenzene diazonium tetrafluoroborate (28.95 g), m.p. 114-115°C.

Reference Example 5

2,4-Difluoro-3-methylbenzene diazonium tetrafluoroborate (28.95 g) is heated at 180°C, whereby the decomposition starts. The inner temperature is raised to 200°C. The product is taken out of the reaction system. After the reaction is completed, distillates (7.05 g) are obtained, which is distilled under normal pressure to give 2,3,6-trifluorotoluene (7.02 g), as colorless oil, b.p. 92°C.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.22 (3H, t, J=1.8 Hz), 6.7-7.1 (2H, m)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Example 6

To 2,3,6-trifluorotoluene (55 g) is added conc. sulfuric acid (366 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C. Thereto a solution of potassium nitrate (44 g) in conc. sulfuric acid (120 ml) is added dropwise at below 10°C and then the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. The mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-5-nitrotoluene (68.25 g), as yellow oil.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.36 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 7.83 (1H, q-like, J=8.2 Hz)

Reference Example 7

To acetic acid (350 ml) are added 5 % Pd-C (3.5 g) and 2,3,6-trifluoro-5-nitrotoluene (35 g) and the mixture is subjected to catalytic reduction at room temperature under atomospheric pressure. 5 % Pd-C is filtered off and the acetic acid is distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue is poured into ice-water, neutralized, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the obtained residue is distilled under reduced pressure to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methylaniline (22.86 g), as yellow crystals, b.p. 85°C/20 mmHg.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.19 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 3.3-3.7 (2H, brs), 6.42 (1H, dt, J=8 Hz, 11 Hz)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Example 8

To anhydrous dichloromethane (170 ml) are added 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methylaniline (16.89 g) and dimethyl sulfide (11 ml). Thereto N-chlorosuccinimide (17.2 g) is added gradually below 5°C. After stirring for 30 minutes, triethylamine (21 ml) is added dropwise and the mixture is refluxed over night. After the mixture is cooled and made alkaline with 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, the resultant is extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 1) to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-methylthiomethylaniline (8.3 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.02 (3H, s), 2.20 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 3.79 (2H, d, J=1.9 Hz), 3.9-4.1 (2H, brs)

Reference Example 9

To 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-methylthiomethyl-aniline (10.67 g) are added ethanol (300 ml) and Raney nickel (100 g, wet) and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. After Raney nickel is filtered off, the filtrate is concentrated, diluted with water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 1)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3,6-dimethylaniline (5.89 g), as yellow crystals.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.10 (3H, d, J=1.7 Hz), 2.18 (3H, s-like), 3.4-3.7 (2H, brs)

Reference Example 10

A solution of t-butyl nitrite (4.56 g) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (26.5 ml) is stirred with heating at 50-52°C and thereto a solution of 2,4,5-trifluoro-3,6-dimethylaniline (4.24 g) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (40 ml) is added dropwise at 50-52°C over a period of 30 minutes. The mixture is further stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water, and then with diluted hydrochloric acid and dried. The diethyl ether is distilled off under atomospheric pressure and the residue is concentrated and distilled under atomospheric pressure to give 2,3,5-trifluoro-4-methyltoluene (1.9 g), as yellow oil, b.p. 120-125°C.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.17 (3H, s-like), 2.25 (3H, d, J=1.7 Hz), 6.62 (1H, ddd, J=2 Hz, 6.3 Hz, 8.3 Hz)

Reference Example 11

To 2,3,5-trifluoro-4-methyltoluene (1.9 g) is added conc. sulfuric acid (19 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C, to which a solution of potassium nitrate (1.71 g) in conc. sulfuric acid (4.6 ml) is added dropwise below 10°C

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. The mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 6) to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-methyl-5-nitrotoluene (1.9 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.29 (3H, t, J=1.5 Hz), 2.32 (3H, d, J=2.4 Hz)

Reference Example 12

To 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-methyl-5-nitrotoluene (1.9 g) are added 2-methoxyethanol (9.9 ml), water (1.1 ml), N-methylpiperazine (4.1 ml) and triethylamine (5.2 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 25 hours. After the reaction is completed, water is added and the resultant is extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 40 : 1) to give 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-3,6-difluoro-4-methyl-5-nitrotoluene (1.73 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.25 (6H, d, J=2.6 Hz), 2.36 (3H, s), 2.4-2.6 (4H, br), 3.0-3.3 (4H, br)

Reference Example 13

To 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-3,6-difluoro-4-methyl-5-nitrotoluene (1.73 g) are added anhydrous dimethyl

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

sulfoxide (18 ml), potassium fluoride (0.53 g) and cyclopropylamine (2.2 ml) and the mixture is stirred at 100°C for 23 hours. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 40 : 1) to give 3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitro-N-cyclopropylaniline (1.65 g).

Reference Example 14

To 2,4-difluoro-3-methylaniline (5.0 g) are added anhydrous dichloromethane (100 ml) and dimethyl sulfide (3.5 ml). Thereto N-chlorosuccinimide (5.6 g) is added below 0°C and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. Thereto triethylamine (4.8 ml) is added and the mixture is refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water, made alkaline with 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 1) to give 2,4-difluoro-3-methyl-6-methyltiomethylaniline (4.9 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ ppm: 1.99 (3H, s), 2.17 (3H, t, J=1.8 Hz), 3.64 (2H, s), 3.93 (2H, brs), 6.56 (1H, dd, J=1.8 Hz, 9.4 Hz)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Example 15

To a solution of Raney nickel (50 g) in ethanol (100 ml) is added a solution of 2,4-difluoro-3-methyl-6-methylthiomethylaniline (4.79 g) in ethanol (30 ml) at room temperature with stirring, followed by stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes. The Raney nickel is filtered off and the filtrate is diluted with water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,4-difluoro-3,6-dimethylaniline (3.14 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.14 (6H, s-like), 3.3-3.6 (2H, br), 6.56 (1H, dd, J=1.5 Hz, 9.7 Hz)

Reference Example 16

To 2,4-difluoro-3,6-dimethylaniline (3.1 g) are added 42 % tetrafluoroboric acid (9 ml) and water (4.5 ml) with stirring and under ice-cooling, followed by dropwise addition of a solution of sodium nitrite (1.6 g) in water (3.2 ml) below 10°C. After stirring the mixture at 0°C for 15 minutes, the resulting crystals are filtered, washed with a mixture of ethanol-diethyl ether (1:2) and then with diethyl ether, followed by drying under reduced pressure to give 2,4-difluoro-3,6-dimethylbenzene diazonium tetrafluoroborate (1.78 g).

Reference Example 17

2,4-Difluoro-3,6-dimethylbenzene diazonium tetrafluoroborate (1.78 g) is heated at 180°C, whereby decompos-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

ition thereof starts. The inner temperature is raised to 200°C. The product is taken out of the reaction system to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-methyltoluene (0.3 g), as yellow oil, b.p. 120-125°C.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.17 (3H, s-like), 2.25 (3H, d, J=1.7 Hz), 6.62 (1H, ddd, J=2 Hz, 6.3 Hz, 8.3 Hz)

Reference Example 18

To 2,4,5-trifluoroaniline (35.0 g) are added anhydrous dichloromethane (530 ml) and dimethyl sulfide (24.6 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C. Thereto N-chlorosuccinimide (38.2 g) is gradually added below 5°C. After the mixture is stirred at the same temperature for 15 minutes, triethylamine (47.7 ml) is gradually added. After reflux for 12 hours, the resultant is made alkaline with 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The residue is purified with column chlomatography (silica-gel, dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give 2-methylthiomethyl-3,4,6-trifluoro-aniline (22.3 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.03 (3H, s), 3.76 (2H, d, J=1.5 Hz), 4.03 (2H, brs), 6.48 (1H, dt, J=7.2 Hz, 10.1 Hz)

Reference Example 19

To 2-methylthiomethyl-3,4,6-trifluoroaniline (22.2 g) are added ethanol (400 ml) and Raney nickel (200 g) and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

After the catalyst is filtered off, the filtrate is added with water and extracted with dichloromethane. The is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoroaniline (12.3 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.13 (3H, d, J=2.1 Hz), 3.56 (2H, brs), 6.75 (1H, dt, J=7.2 Hz, 10.2 Hz)

Reference Example 20

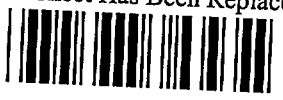
To 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoroaniline (10.6 g) is added a mixture of conc. sulfuric acid (13.8 ml) and water (46 ml) and the mixture is cooled. Thereto an aqueous solution (20 ml) of sodium nitrite (5.5 g) is added dropwise at 0-5°C. The solution is gradually added to a mixture of copper (II) sulfate 5 hydrate (41 g), potassium cyanide (43 g), ammonium hydroxide (60 ml) and water (260 ml) at 10-30°C. The mixture is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated and the residue is purified with column chromatography (silica-gel, dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzonitrile (4.3 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.52 (3H, d, J=2.5 Hz), 6.94 (1H, dt, J=6.2 Hz, 8.9 Hz)

Reference Example 21

To 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzonitrile (4.3 g) is added 50 % sulfuric acid (40 ml) and the mixture is heated at 150-160°C for 6 hours. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water and extracted with diethyl ether. The

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

ether layer is added with water and made alkaline with 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution while the water layer is made acidic with conc. hydrochloric acid. The resultant is subjected to extraction with diethyl ether, and the extract is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoic acid (3.3 g).

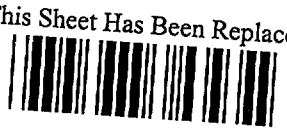
^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.47 (3H, d, J=2.6 Hz), 6.88 (1H, dt, J=6.3 Hz, 9.5 Hz)

Reference Example 22

To 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoic acid (3.2 g) is added thiony chloride (7 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After concentrating, 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl chloride (3.3 g) is obtained.

Separately, two drops of carbon tetrachloride are added to a solution of metallic magnesium (0.4 g) in absolute ethanol (0.9 ml). When the reaction starts, a mixture of diethyl malonate (2.6 ml), absolute ethanol (1.6 ml) and anhydrous toluene (6 ml) is added dropwise below 60°C. After stirring at 60°C for 1 hour, the reaction mixture is cooled to 0°C and thereto a solution of 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl chloride prepared above in toluene (5 ml) is added dropwise. After stirring for 30 minutes, a mixture of conc. sulfuric acid (0.4 ml) and water (6 ml) is added and the mixture is extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give diethyl 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoylmalonate (5.2 g).

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Example 23

To diethyl 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoylmalonate (5.1 g) are added water (20 ml) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (30 mg) and the mixture is refluxed for 2.5 hours. After cooling, the resultant is extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give ethyl 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoylacetate (3.3 g).

Reference Example 24

To ethyl 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoylacetate (3.2 g) are added acetic anhydride (3.0 g) and triethoxymethane (2.7 g) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After concentrating, ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (3.5 g) is obtained.

Reference Example 25

Ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (3.5 g) is dissolved in ethanol (25 ml) and thereto cyclopropylamine (0.84 ml) is added dropwise under ice-cooling. After stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes, the mixture is concentrated and the residue is purified with column chromatography (silica-gel, dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 1) to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (2.7 g).

Reference Example 26

Ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-cyclo-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

propylaminoacrylate (2.6 g) is dissolved in anhydrous dioxane (26 ml) and thereto 60 % sodium hydride (0.38 g) is gradully added under ice-cooling. After stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The residue is added with diethyl ether and crystals are filtered, which are recrystalized from ethanol to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (2.0 g), m.p. 185-187°C.

Reference Example 27

To ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (1.9 g) are added 90 % acetic acid (20 ml) and conc. hydrochloric acid (5 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling, the precipitated crystals are isolated, washed with water, ethanol, and diethyl ether in this order to give 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4,-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (1.6 g), as colorless needles, m.p. 294-298°C.

^{1}H-NMR (CF_3COOD) δppm: 1.43-1.55 (2H, m), 1.65-1.81 (2H, m), 3.06 (3H, d, J=2.8 Hz), 4.08-4.20 (1H, m), 8.40 (1H, dd, J=6.8 Hz, 10.3 Hz), 9.46 (1H,s)

Reference Example 28

Employing 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoic acid (5.60 g) and thionyl chloride (9.8 ml), the procedure of

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Example 22 is repeated to give 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl chloride (5.20 g), as colorless oil, b.p. 82°C/23 mmHg.

NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.35 (3H, m)

Reference Example 29

Empoying 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl chloride (5.00 g), the procedure of Reference Examlpe 22 is repeated to give diethyl 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoylmalonate (8 g), as yellow oil.

Reference Example 30

Employing diethyl 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoylmalonate (8 g) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (80 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 23 is repeated to give ethyl 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoylacetate (4.5 g), as yellow oil.

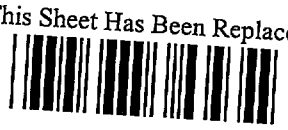
Reference Example 31

Employing ethyl 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoylacetate (4.20 g) and ethyl orthoformate (4 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 24 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5 g).

Reference Example 32

Empoying ethyl 2-(2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5 g) and cyclopropylamine (1.0 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

cyclopropylaminoacrylate (4.74 g), as white plates (recrystallized from petroleum ether - n-hexane), m.p. 78-79°C.

Reference Example 33

Employing ethyl 2-(2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (4.50 g) and 60 % sodium hydride (580 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 26 is repeated to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.19 g), as white needles (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane), m.p. 180-183°C.

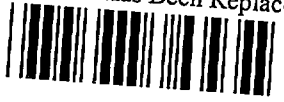
Reference Examples 34

Employing ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.10 g) and conc. hydrochloric acid - 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (81.25 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid (3.47 g), as white needles, m.p. 218-220°C.

Reference Examples 35

To 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methylaniline (1 g) is added acetic anhydride (3 ml) at room temperature with stirring and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-N-acetylaniline (1.14 g), as white crystals.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.21 (3H, s), 2.24 (3H, t, J=2.1 Hz), 7.2-7.5 (1H, brs), 8.10 (1H, dt, J=7.9 Hz, 12 Hz)

Reference Examples 36

To 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-N-acetylaniline (1.94 g) is added conc. sulfuric acid (19 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C. Thereto potassium nitrate (2 g) is added below 20°C and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-nitro-N-acetylaniline (2.08 g), as white crystals.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.21 (3H, s), 2.34 (3H, t, J=2.2 Hz), 7.3-7.5 (1H, brs)

Reference Examples 37

To 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-nitro-N-acetyl-aniline (2.08 g) are added ethanol (30 ml) and 10 % hydrochloric acid (30 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 3 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, neutralized with potassium carbonate, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-nitroaniline (2.05 g), as brown crystals.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.29 (3H, s), 2.29 (3H, t, J=2.1 Hz), 5.5-5.9 (2H, brs)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Examples 38

To a solution of t-butyl nitrite (1.87 g) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (10.9 ml) is added dropwise a solution of 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-nitroaniline (2.05 g) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (16.4 ml) with stirring at 50-52°C and the mixture is stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvet is distilled off under reduced pressure and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-nitrotoluene (0.7 g).

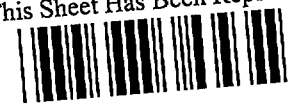
^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.35 (3H, t, J=2.1 Hz), 7.62 (1H, ddd, J=2.6 Hz, 5.7 Hz, 8.3 Hz)

Reference Examples 39

To acetic acid (10 ml) are added Pd-C (0.1 g) and 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-nitrotoluene (0.7 g) and the mixture is subjected to catalytic reduction at room temperature under atmospheric pressure. 5 % Pd-C is filtered and the acetic acid is distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue is poured into ice-water, neutralized, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,3,5-trifluoro-4-methylailine (0.48 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.08 (3H, t, J=1.8 Hz), 3.6-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

4.0 (2H, brs), 6.26 (1H, ddd, J=2.2 Hz, 6.8 Hz, 9.0 Hz)

Reference Example 40

To conc. sulfuric acid (3 ml) is added sodium nitrite (0.3 g). The mixture is stirred at 70°C for 10 minutes and then cooled to below 40°C and thereto a solution of 2,3,5-trifluoro-4-methylaniline (0.48 g) in acetic acid (5 ml) is added dropwise below 40°C. After stirring for 30 minutes, the reaction mixture is added dropwise to a solution of copper (I) chloride (1.04 g) in conc. hydrochloric acid (10.4 ml) and the mixture is stirred at 80°C for 30 minutes and then cooled. The resultant is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-chlorotoluene (0.22 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.20 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 6.90 (1H, ddd, J=2.5 Hz, 5.8 Hz, 8.3 Hz)

Reference Examples 41

To 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-chlorotoluene (0.22 g) is added conc. sulfuric acid (3 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C. Thereto potassium nitrate (0.18 g) is added and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes under ice-cooling. The reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with a saturated

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate, then with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-chloro-5-nitrotoluene (0.17 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.33 (3H, t, J=2.2 Hz)

Reference Examples 42

To 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-chloro-5-nitrotoluene (0.17 g) are added ethanol (3.3 ml), water (0.5 ml), N-methyl-piperazine (0.45 ml) and triethylamine (0.56 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 24 hours. After the reaction is completed, water is added to the reaction mixture and the mixture is extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; dichloromethane : methanol = 20 : 1) to give 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-3,6-difluoro-4-chloro-5-nitrotoluene (0.13 g).

To the thus obtained 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-3,6-difluoro-4-chloro-5-nitrotoluene (0.13 g) are added anhydrous dimethylformamide (2 ml), potassium fluoride (37 mg) and cyclopropylamine (0.15 ml) and the mixture is stirred at 100°C for 3 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloro-methane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; dichloromethane : methanol =

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

10 : 1) to give 3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-5-chloro-2-methyl-6-nitro-N-cyclopropylaniline (0.14 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.4-0.5 (2H, m), 0.6-0.8 (2H, m), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.36 (3H, s), 2.4-2.7 (4H, brs), 3.1-3.3 (4H, brs), 4.1-4.2 (1H, brs)

Reference Examples 43

Employing 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoic acid (185 mg) and thionyl chloride (600 µl), the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl chloride (183 mg).

Reference Examples 44

Employing 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl chloride (183 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give diethyl 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methyl-benzoylmalonate (320 mg), as brown oil.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.02, 1.29 and 1.38 (all 6H, each t, J=7 Hz), 2.27 (3H, d, J=1.5 Hz), 4.02, 4.21 and 4.39 (all 4H, each q, J=7 Hz), 3.36 and 13.7 (all 1H, each s)

Reference Examples 45

Employing diethyl 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoylmalonate (320 mg) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (3 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 23 is repeated to give ethyl 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoylacetate (300 mg), as brown oil.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.25 and 1.35 (all 3H, each t, J=7 Hz), 2.32 (3H, m), 4.18 and 4.29 (all 2H, each q, J=7

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Hz), 3.89, 5.25 and 12.35 (all 2H, each s)

Reference Example 46

Employing ethyl 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoylacetate (300 mg) and ethyl orthoformate (550 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 24 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (360 mg), as brown oil.

Reference Example 47

Employing ethyl 2-(3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (360 mg) and cyclopropylamine (60 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (410 mg), as brown oil.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.90 (4H, m), 1.04 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 2.14 (3H, m), 3.01 (1H, m), 3.99 (2H, q, J=7 Hz), 8.29 (1H, d, J=14 Hz), 11.2 (1H, br)

Reference Examples 48

Employing ethyl 2-(3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (410 mg) and 60 % sodium hydride (35 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 26 is repeated to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (70 mg), as pale yellow powder (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-haxane), m.p. 153-154°C.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Examples 49

Employing ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (70 mg) and conc. hydrochloric acid - 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (1 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-cyclopropyl-8-chloro-6,7-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (58 mg), as white needles, m.p. 213-215°C.

Reference Examples 50

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl chloride, b.p. 78°C/14 mmHg.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.24 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.75 (2H, dq, J=2.3 Hz, 7.5 Hz)

Reference Examples 51

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give diethyl 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoylmalonate.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.04 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.19 (3H, t, J=7.4 Hz), 1.38 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.5-2.8 (2H, m), 4.03 (2H, q, J=7 Hz), 4.39 (2H, q, J=7 Hz), 13.8 (1H, s)

Reference Example 52

Employing diethyl 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluoro-benzoylmalonate (17.2 g) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (0.25 g), the procedure of Reference Example 23 is repeated to give ethyl 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoylacetate (11.09 g).

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Example 53

Employing ethyl 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoylacetate (8 g) and ethyl orthoformate (6.1 g), the procedure of Reference Example 24 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate.

Reference Examples 54

Employing ethyl 2-(2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate and cyclopropylamine, the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate.

Reference Examples 55

Employing ethyl 2-(2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (8.71 g) and 60 % sodium hydride (1.09 g), the procedure of Reference Example 26 is repeated to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (5 g), as white powder, m.p. 139-140°C.

Reference Example 56

Employing ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (5 g), conc. hydrochloric acid (11 ml), water (4.4 ml) and acetic acid (44 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (4.2 g), as white powder, m.p. 197-198°C.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Examples 57

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoro-benzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (1.0 g) and p-fluoroaniline (0.39 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-(4-fluoro-phenyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (0.15 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(4-fluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.64 g), as white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol), m.p. 256-259°C.

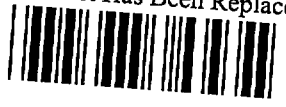
Reference Examples 58

Employing ethyl 1-(4-fluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.56 g), conc. hydrochloric acid (1.5 ml), and 90 % acetic acid (6 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(4-fluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.49 g), as white crystals, m.p. 255-257°C.

Reference Examples 59

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoro-benzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (1.0 g) and 70 % aqueous ethyl-amine solution (0.24 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoro-benzoyl)-3-ethylaminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (0.15 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.6 g), as white crystals, m.p. 157-159°C.

Reference Example 60

Empoying ethyl 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.55 g), conc. hydrochloric acid (1.5 ml) and 90 % acetic acid (6 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.40 g), as white crystals, m.p. >300°C.

^{1}H-NMR (DMSO-d_6) δppm: 1.37 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.82 (3H, d, J=3.2 Hz), 4.54 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 8.07 (1H, dd, J=7.2 Hz, 9.8 Hz), 9.00 (1H, s), 15.25 (1H, s)

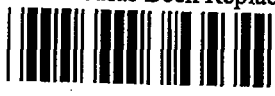
Reference Example 61

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (10.0 g) and ethylamine gas, the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethylaminoacrylate (9.0 g, white crystals), which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (1.30 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (6.76 g), as pale yellow needles (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane), m.p. 197-198°C.

Reference Example 62

Employing ethyl 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-caboxylate (6.51 g) and conc.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

hydrochloric acid : 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (100 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (5.53 g), as colorless needles (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane), m.p. 203-204°C.

Reference Example 63

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5.0 g) and 2,4-difluoroaniline (2.02 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.6 g),as pale yellow prisms (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane), m.p. 156-157.5°C.

Reference Example 64

Employing ethyl 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.3 g) and conc. hydrochloric acid : 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (80 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (2.93 g), as white powder, m.p. 221-222°C.

Reference Example 65

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluoro-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

benzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (10.0 g) and 4-methoxyaniline (3.87 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoil)-3-(4-methoxyphenyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (1.56 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(4-methoxyphenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (8.27 g), as pale yellow needles, m.p. 175-176°C.

Reference Example 66

Employing ethyl 1-(4-methoxyphenyl)-5-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.27 g) and 47 % hydrobromic acid (50 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(4-hydroxy-phenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (2.82 g), as white powder, m.p. 287-288.5°C.

Reference Example 67

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluoro-benzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5.0 g)and 2-aminothiophene (2.22 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2-thienyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(2-thienyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (1.05 g), as white powder (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - n-hexane), m.p. 198-200°C.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Examples 68

Employing ethyl 1-(2-thienyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (1.05 g), conc. hydrochloric acid (10 ml) and 90 % acetic acid (40 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(2-thienyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.93 g), as white powder, m.p. 221-222.5°C.

Reference Example 69

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (8.38 g) and 2S-2-amino-1-propanol (2.07 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2S-3-hydroxy-2-propyl)aminoacrylate (9.72 g, yellow oil), which is then treated with potassium carbonate (4.25 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 3S-9,10-difluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylate (1.30 g), as colorless needles (recrystallized from ethanol), m.p. 216-217°C.

Reference Example 70

Employing ethyl 3S-9,10-difluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylate (1.25 g) and conc. hydrochloric acid : 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (20 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 3S (-) -9,10-difluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de] [1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylic acid (1.03

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

g), as white powder, m.p. 249-251°C (dec.).

Reference Example 71

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (7.0 g) and ethanol amine (1.33 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetraflurobenzoyl)-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)aminoacrylate. To the product are added pyridine (70 ml) and acetic anhydride (2.57 ml) and the mixture is stirred at room temperature over-night. After concentration, the resultant is diluted with water, subjected to extraction with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and then with a saturated saline solution and dried to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2-acetyloxyethyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (1.09 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(2-acetyloxyethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (6.15 g), as colorless prisms (recrystallized from ethyl acetate), m.p. 192-193°C.

Reference Example 72

Employing ethyl 1-(2-acetyloxyethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (5.80 g) and conc. hydrochloric acid : 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (100 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (4.04

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

g), as pale yellow flakes (recrystallized from ethanol), m.p. 244.5-247°C.

Reference Example 73

To 1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (4.00 g) is added thionyl chloride (20 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After concentrating, the obtained residue is mixed with ethanol (50 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After concentrating, the resultant is extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, water and saturated saline solution in this order and dried. The solvent is concentrated and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; ethyl acetate : n-hexane = 1 : 20), followed by recrystllization from ethyl acetate - n-hexane to give ethyl 1-(2-chloroethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (2.00 g), as colorless prisms, m.p. 161.5-163.5°C (dec.).

Reference Example 74

To ethyl 1-(2-chloroethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-carboxylate (1.81 g) are added DBU (2.33 ml) and toluene (150 ml) and the mixture is refluxed with heating for 4 hours. After concentrating, the obtained residue is extracted with dichloroethane, and the extract is washed with dilute hydrochloric acid, water and saturated saline solution in this order and dried. The

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

solvent is concentrated and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; ethyl acetate : n-hexane = 1 : 20), followed by recrystallization from n-hexane - diethyl ether to give ethyl 1-vinyl-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.72 g), as colorless needles, m.p. 134-135.5°C.

Reference Example 75

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5.0 g), 2-chloroethylamine hydrochloride (1.74 g) and triethylamine (1.97 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2-chloroethyl)-aminoacrylate (5.52 g), which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (0.72 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(2-chloroethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (3.90 g), as colorless needles (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - n-hexane), m.p. 161.5-163.5°C (dec.)

Reference Example 76

To 2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoic acid (10.0 g) is added methanol (100 ml) and thereto thionyl chloride (8 ml) is added dropwise at room temperature. After reflux for 2 hours, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and extracted with dichloromethane. The solvent is concentrated to give methyl 2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoate (10.8 g).

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 2.63 (3H, s), 3.94 (3H, s), 7.38

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

(1H, t, J=8 Hz), 7.84 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=8 Hz)

Reference Example 77

Methyl 2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoate (10.0 g) is dissolved in acetic acid (50 ml) and thereto 5 % Pd-C (1 g) is added to carry out catalytic reduction at room temperature under 1 atm. After 1.5 hours, the catalyst is filtered off. The reaction mixture is concentrated, and thereto is added water, and the mixture is made alkaline with potassium carbonate, followed by extraction with dichloromethane. The solvent is concentrated to give methyl 2-methyl-3-aminobenzoate (8.6 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.34 (3H, s), 3.55-3.85 (2H, brs), 3.87 (3H, s), 6.80 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 7.04 (1H, t, J=8 Hz), 7.20 (1H, d, J=8 Hz)

Reference Example 78

To methyl 2-methyl-3-aminobenzoate (1.6 g) are added acetic acid (20 ml) and sodium acetate (1.6 g). Thereto a solution of bromine (3.1 g) in acetic acid (5 ml) is added dropwise below 20°C over a period of 10 minutes. After the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and the resultant is extracted with diethyl ether. The ether layer is neutralized with potassium carbonate and dried. The solvent is concentrated to give methyl 2-methyl-3-amino-4,6-dibromobenzoate (2.8 g).

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 2.14 (3H, s), 3.93 (3H, s),

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

4.05-4.30 (2H, brs), 7.52 (1H, s)

Reference Example 79

To methyl 2-methyl-3-amino-4,6-dibromobenzoate (1.4 g) are added ethanol (5 ml) and 42 % tetrafluoroboric acid (2.5 ml), and thereto is added dropwise a solution of sodium nitrite (0.33 g) in water (1 ml) below 5°C. After stirring the mixture for 10 minutes, the precipitated crystals are filtered and washed with a small amount of water, ethanol and diethyl ether in this order to give methyl 2-methyl-4,6-dibromo-3-benzoate diazonium tetrafluoroborate (1.6 g), m.p. 202-204°C (dec.).

Reference Example 80

Methyl 2-methyl-4,6-dibromo-3-benzoate diazonium tetrafluoroborate (1.3 g) is heated at 200°C for 10 minutes. After cooling, the reaction mixture is added with ice-water and extracted with dichloromethane. The solvent is concentrated and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; chloroform : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give methyl 2-methyl-3-fluoro-4,6-dibromobenzoate (0.6 g).

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 2.27 (3H, d, J=2.5 Hz), 3.95 (3H, s), 7.63 (1H, d, J=5.8 Hz)

Reference Example 81

To methyl 2-methyl-3-fluoro-4,6-dibromobenzoate (75.5 g) are added ethanol (460 ml) and 10 % aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide (460 ml) and the mixture is

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture is diluted with water and extracted with diethyl ether. The aqueous layer is made acidic with conc. hydrochloric acid and extracted with diethyl ether. The solvent is concentrated to give 2-methyl-3-fluoro-4,6-dibromobenzoic acid (61 g), m.p. 144-146°C.

Reference Example 82

Employing 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoic acid (2.0 g), the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride (2.0 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.37 (3H, d, J=2.5 Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J=5.8 Hz)

Reference Example 83

Employing diethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methyl-benzoyl chloride (2.0 g), the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give diethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoylmalonate (2.6 g).

Reference Example 84

Employing diethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methyl-benzoylmalonate (2.6 g), the procedure of Reference Example 23 is repeated to give ethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methyl-benzoylacetate (2.1 g).

Reference Example 85

Employing ethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methyl-benzoylacetate (2.1 g), the procedure of Reference Example

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

24 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (2.1 g).

Reference Example 86

Employing ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (69.5 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (48.1 g).

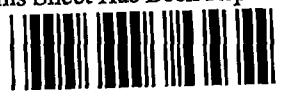
Reference Example 87

A mixture comprising ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (45.0 g), potassium carbonate (16.7 g) and dimethylformamide (450 ml) is reacted at 140°C for 30 minutes. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and the precipitated crystals are filtered, which are recrystallized from ethanol to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (33.6 g), as white crystals, m.p. 195-197°C.

Reference Example 88

Employing ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (32.5 g), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (27.2 g), as white crystals, m.p. 237-239°C.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Reference Example 89

To 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.2 g) is added thionyl chloride (2 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and made alkaline with 10 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. After stirring for 30 minutes, the resultant is extracted with dichloromethane. The aqueous layer is made acidic with 10 % hydrochloric acid and then extracted with dichloroethane. The solvent is concentrated and the residue is recrystallized from acetic acid to give 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (80 mg), as white crystals, m.p. 258-260°C.

Reference Example 90

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoro-benzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (1.0 g) and 2,4-difluoroaniline (0.5 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)aminoacrylate (1.1 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.95 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.23 (3H, d, J=2.4 Hz), 4.06 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 6.70-6.83 (1H, m), 6.91-7.03 (2H, m), 7.26-7.45 (1H, m), 8.60 (1H, d, J=13.8 Hz), 11.36 (1H, d, J=13.8 Hz)

Reference Example 91

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoro-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

benzoyl)-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)aminoacrylate (1.1 g) and 60 % sodium hydride (0.13 g), the procedure of Reference Example 26 is repeated to give ethyl 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.7 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.38 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 2.91 (3H, d, J=3 Hz), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.1 Hz), 6.46 (1H, dd, J=6.9 Hz, 11.1 Hz), 7.10-7.26 (2H, m), 7.38-7.56 (1H, m), 8.26 (1H, s)

Reference Example 92

Employing ethyl 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.7 g), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.5 g), colorless needles (recrystalized from acetic acid), m.p. 280-281°C.

Example 1

To 3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitro-N-cyclopropylaniline (1.65 g) is added diethyl ethoxymethylenemalonate (1.45 ml) and the mixture is heated at 150°C for 25 hours. After cooling, the reaction product is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 100 : 1) to give diethyl[N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitrophenyl]aminomethylene]malonate (1.58 g). The product is dissolved in acetic anhydride (7.9 ml) and

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

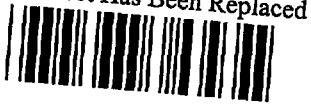
thereto conc. sulfuric acid (3.16 ml) is added dropwise at 50-60°C, followed by stirring for 30 minutes. The resultant mixture is poured into ice-water, neutralized, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure. Purification by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 10 : 1) and recrystallization from ethanol - diethyl ether to give ethyl 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (28 mg), as yellow crystals, m.p. 146-147°C.

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 0.7-0.8 (2H, m), 1.0-1.2 (2H, m), 1.39 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 2.39 (3H, s), 2.59 (3H ,s), 2.4-2.7 (4H, br), 2.75 (3H, d, J=2.9 Hz), 3.1-3.4 (4H, br), 3.8-4.0 (1H, m), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.1 Hz), 8.54 (1H, s)

Example 2

To ethyl 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (25 mg) are added 10 % aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide (3 ml) and ethanol (3 ml), and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After cooling, the reaction mixture is diluted with water and washed with dichloromethane. After the aqueous layer is made acidic with acetic acid and then made weak alkaline with an aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate. The resultant is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and to the residue is added diethyl

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

ether. The precipitated crystals are filtered and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (14 mg), as yellow crystals, m.p. 205-206°C.

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 0.7-0.9 (2H, m), 1.1-1.4 (2H, m), 2.39 (3H, s), 2.5-2.8 (4H, br), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.76 (3H, d, J=3 Hz), 3.2-3.5 (4H, br), 4.0-4.2 (1H, m), 8.85 (1H, s), 14.3-14.9 (1H, br)

Example 3

To 6,7-difluoro-1-cyclopropyl-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-difluoro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid - $B(OCOCH_3)_2$ chelate (1.24 g) are added 4-methyl-1-piperazine (1.0 g) and dimethylacetamide (6 ml), and the mixture is reacted at 50°C for 20 hours. After concentrating, the obtained residue is dissolved in acetone (20 ml) and thereto conc. hydrochloric acid (5 ml) is added, followed by stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent is distilled off and the resultant is added with water and extracted with dichloromethane. The aqueous layer is neutralized with an aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate and extracted with dichloromethane. After drying over magnesium sulfate, the residue is added with a mixture of diethyl ether and ethanol. The precipitated crystals are filtered and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.1 g), as yellow crystals, m.p. 205-206°C.

Example 4

To a suspension of 6,7-difluoro-1-cyclopropyl-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (1.88 g) in N-methylpyrrolidone (5 ml) is added 4-methyl-1-piperazine (2.02 g) and the mixture is stirred at 150°C for 3 hours. After the reaction is completed, the reaction mixture is concentrated and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 3 : 1), followed by recrystallization from ethanol to give 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.05 g), as yellow crystals, m.p. 205-206°C.

Example 5

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of the above Examples 1-4 is repeated to give the following compounds.

1) 7-(1-Piprazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 185-187°C, pale yellow needles (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

2) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 183-185°C, colorless powder

3) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 96-98°C, pale yellow needles

4) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 231-233°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

5) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 229-232°C, pale yellow prisms (recrystallized from ethanol)

6) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 206-208°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - ethanol)

7) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 267-270°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

8) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 205-207°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

9) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 229-231°C, white needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

10) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 188-189°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

11) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 213-216°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

12) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cycloprpyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 214-217°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

13) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 190-192°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane)

14) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

15) 7-(3-Amino-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

16) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5,6-difluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

17) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5,6-difluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

18) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5,6-difluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

19) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5,6-difluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

20) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

21) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 213-215°C, yellow crystals

22) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

23) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

24) 7-Morpholino-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 245-247°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

25) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (trans form), m.p. 272-275°C (dec.) white powder (recrystallized from methanol - ethyl acetate)

26) 7-(3-Aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclo-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

propyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 280-283°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from methanol - water)

27) 7-(4-Hydroxy-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 220-221°C, colorless needles (recrystallized from methanol)

28) 7-(4-Fluoro-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 204-207°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

29) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl-N-methylamino)-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 210-212°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

30) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (cis form), m.p. 239-241°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

31) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 175-177°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

32) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (cis form), m.p. 280-284°C

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

(dec.), pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

33) 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 236-239°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

34) 7-(1,4-Diazabicyclo[4,3,0]nonan-4-yl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 203-205°C, colorless needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

35) 7-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 261-263°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

36) 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 194-197°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

37) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (trans form), m.p. 226-229°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

38) 7-[4-(5-Methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.14-1.24 (2H, m), 1.26-1.41 (2H, m), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.72-2,84 (7H, m), 3.28-3.53 (7H, m),

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

7.29 (1H, d, 8.2 Hz), 8.73 (1H, s), 15.57 (1H, s)

39) 7-(4-Benzyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 165-166°C, pale yellow needles (recrystallized from diethyl ether - ethanol)

40) 7-(4-Benzyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 176-178°C, pale yellow powder

41) 7-(1,4-Diazabicyclo[4,3,0]nonan-4-yl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 194-197°C, pale yellow needles (recrystallized from dichlomethane - n-hexane)

42) 7-Morpholino-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 255-259°C, white needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

43) 7-(4-Hydroxy-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 247-250°C, white needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

44) 7-(4-Fluoro-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 259-261°C, pale yellow needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

45) 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride, m.p. 215-219°C, white

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

46) 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride, m.p. 221-223°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

47) 7-(3-Aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclo-propyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

48) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclo-propyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (cis form), m.p. 209-213°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

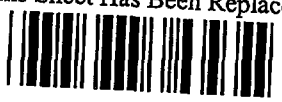
49) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclo-propyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (trans form), m.p. 214-216°C pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

50) 7-[4-(5-Methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)-methyl-1-piperazinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

51) 7-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 217-220°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

52) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl-N-methylamino)-1-pyrrolidinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 184-187°C,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

53) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 147-149°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

54) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

55) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (cis form), m.p. 215-217°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

56) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (trans form), m.p. 223-224°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

57) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 194-195°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

58) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 244-246°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

59) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydroxy-4-oxoquinoline-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 228-230°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

60) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydroxy-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. >300°C, white powder

61) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. >300°C, white powder

62) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 219-220°C (dec.), colorless needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

63) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 212.5-215°C (dec.), pale yellow prisms (recrystallized from ethanol)

64) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 209.5-211°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

65) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 278-282°C (dec.), yellowish crystals (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

66) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarobonylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 249-250°C, white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

67) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 292-295°C (dec.), pale yellowish white crystals (recrystallized from methanol - water)

68) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 225-227°C, white crystals (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

69) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-1-pyrrolidiny)-1-ethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 230-231°C, white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

70) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-ethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 275-281°C (dec.), yellowish crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

71) Ethyl 7-(1-piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate, m.p. 181-183°C (dec.), pale yellow needles (recrystallized from chloroform - n-hexane)

72) Ethyl 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-difluoro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate, m.p. 165-166°C (dec.), pale yellow needles (recrystallized

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

from ethyl acetate - n-hexane)

73) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 205-206.5°C (dec.), pale yellow powder

74) 7-(4-Mehtyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 187.5-189.5°C (dec.), pale yellow needles (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - n-hexane)

75) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 274-276°C (dec.), white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

76) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2-thienyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 239-240.5°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

77) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 161-163°C, yellow powder (recrystallized from dimethyl-formamide)

78) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 146-147°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide - ethanol - diethyl ether)

79) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

acid, m.p. 201-202°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

80) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 164-165°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

81) 3S(-)-10-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-9-fluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylic acid, m.p. 235-236.5°C (dec.), colorless prisms (recrystallized from ethanol), $[\alpha]_D^{25}$ = -125.9° (C=0.21, chloroform)

82) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 226-228°C, pale yellow crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

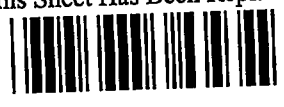
83) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 229-232°C, white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol - water)

84) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 291-294°C, white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol - water)

Example 6

A mixture comprising 7-(3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (trans form) (120 mg), ethanol (4 ml) and 10 % hydrochloric acid (4 ml) is refluxed for 30 minutes. After concentrating, the obtained residue is recrystallized from methanol - ethyl acetate to give 7-(3-amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (trans form) (60 mg), as white powder, m.p. 272-275°C.

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of Example 6 is repeated to give the following compounds.

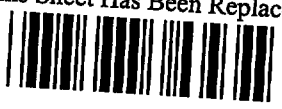
1) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (cis form), m.p. 280-284°C (dec.), pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

2) 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 236-239°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

3) 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 194-197°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

4) 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride, m.p. 215-219°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

5) 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride, m.p. 221-223°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

6) 7-(3-Aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid

7) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (cis form), m.p. 209-213°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

8) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidiny)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (trans form), m.p. 214-216°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

9) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 292-295°C (dec.), pale yellow crystals (recrystallized from methanol - water)

10) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-ethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 275-281°C (dec.), yellowish crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

11) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 164-165°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Example 7

To a solution of 7-(1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (40 mg) in 5 % sodium hydroxide (2 ml) is added acetic anhydride (0.1 ml) at room temperature. After the mixture is made acidic with dilute hydrochloric acid, the resultant is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried over magnesium sulfate. After concentrating, the obtained residue is recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (29 mg), as white powder, m.p. 261-263°C.

Starting from suitable materials, the procedures of Example 7 is repeated to give 7-(4-acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

Example 8

To a solution of 7-(4-benzyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid (150 mg) in ethanol (20 ml) is added 10 % Pd-C (50 mg) and the catalytic reduction is carried out at 70°C under atomospheric pressure. After filtering off the 10 % Pd-C, the filtrate is concentrated. The residue is recrystallized from dimethylformamide to give 7-(1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (64 mg), m.p. 185-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

187°C, as pale yellow needles.

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of Example 8 is repeated to give 7-(3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

Example 9

The procedures of Example 1 are repeated, via diethyl [N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(3-ethoxycarbonylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitrophenyl]-aminomethylene]malonate as an intermediate compound, to give ethyl 7-(3-ethoxycarbonylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylate.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.7-0.9 (2H, m), 1.0-1.2 (2H, m), 1.39 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.40 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 2.1-2.4 (2H, m), 2.50 (3H, s), 2.75 (3H, d, J=3 Hz), 3.4-3.7 (4H, m), 3.8-4.0 (1H, m), 4.1-4.5 (5H, m), 5.3-5.5 (1H, m), 8.54 (1H, s)

Example 10

The procedure of Example 1 is repeated, via diethyl [N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(4-benzyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitrophenyl]aminomethylene]malonate as an intermediate compound, to give ethyl 7-(4-benzyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.6-0.8 (2H, m), 1.0-1.2 (2H,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

m), 1.39 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 2.58 (3H, s), 2.4-2.7 (4H, br), 2.74 (3H, d, J=3.0 Hz), 3.1-3.4 (4H, br), 3.60 (2H, s), 3.8-4.0 (1H, m), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.1 Hz), 7.3-7.4 (5H, m), 8.53 (1H, s)

Example 11

The procedure of Example 1 is repeated, via [N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(4-benzyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitrophenyl]aminomethylene]malonate as an intermediate compound, to give ethyl 7-(4-benzyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate, m.p. 128-129°C, as pale yellow powder.

Example 12

To ethyl 7-(3-ethoxycarbonylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (130 mg) is added 5 % aqueous potassium hydroxide solution (3.2 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture is made acidic with acetic acid and then made weak alkaline with potassium carbonate. The resultant is extracted with dichloroethane and the extract is dried, followed by distillating the solvent under reduced pressure. To the residue is added diethyl ether and the precipitated crystals are filtered to give 7-(3-amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid (30 mg), m.p. 96-98°C, as pale yellow needles.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Example 13

The procedure of Example 1 is repeated, via diethyl [N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2-methyl-5-chloro-6-nitrophenyl]aminomethylene]-malonate as an intermediate compound, to give ethyl 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-chloro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate, m.p. 175-177°C, as yellow crystals.

Example 14

To a solution of 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.58 g) in N-methyl-2-pyrrolidone (5 ml) is added 4-oxopiperidine (0.64 g) and the mixture is heated at 90°C for 20 minutes. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure. To the resulting residue is added ethanol and the precipitated crystals are filtered to give 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-(4-oxo-1-piperidinyl)-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (230 mg).

Elementary Analysis for $C_{19}H_{19}N_2O_4F$

Calcd. (%): C, 63.68; H, 5.34; N, 7.82

Found (%): C, 63.58; H, 5.39; N, 7.72

Experiment (Antimicrobial activity in vitro)

The antimicrobial activity of the test compounds as mentioned below was tested by measuring minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) by the serial dilution method on agar plate [cf. Chemotherapy, 22, 1126-1128 (1974)]. The

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

microorganisms were used in a concentration of 1 x 10^6 cells/ml (O.D. 660 mμ, 0.07-0.16, 100 folds dilution). The results are shown in Table 1.

[Test compounds]:

1. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

2. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

3. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

4. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

5. 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

6. 7-(3-Aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

7. 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (trans form)

8. 7-Morpholino-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

9. 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

10. 7-(1,4-Diazabicyclo[4,3,0]nonan-4-yl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

11. 7-(4-Hydroxy-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

12. 7-(4-Fluoro-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

13. 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (cis form)

14. 7-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

15. 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

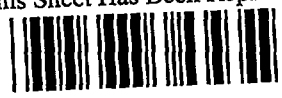
16. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

17. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

18. 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

19. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

20. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

21. 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

22. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

23. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

24. 7-(1,4-Diazabicyclo[4,3,0]nonan-4-yl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

25. 7-Morpholino-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

26. 7-(4-Hydroxy-1-piperizinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

27. 7-(4-Fluoro-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

28. 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (trans form)

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

29. 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride

30. 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride

31. 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (trans form)

32. 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (cis form)

33. 7-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

34. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

35. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

36. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

37. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

38. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

39. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

40. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

41. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

42. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

43. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

44. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

45. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

46. 3S (-)-10-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-9-fluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylic acid

47. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

48. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

49. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

[Test microorganisms]:

A: Staphylococcus aureus FDA 209P

B: Staphylococcus aeruginosa E-2

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Table 1

Test compounds	Microorganisms	
	A	B
1	0.049	0.78
2	0.195	0.78
3	0.098	0.39
4	0.098	0.39
5	0.098	0.39
6	0.098	1.56
7	0.195	0.78
8	0.098	-
9	0.195	-
10	0.049	0.78
11	0.049	-
12	0.098	-
13	0.195	0.78
14	0.098	-
15	0.098	0.78
16	0.098	0.78
17	0.049	0.39
18	0.098	0.78
19	0.098	0.39
20	0.098	0.78
21	0.098	0.39

- to be continued -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Table 1 (Continue)

Test compounds	Microorganisms	
	A	B
22	0.024	0.39
23	0.024	-
24	0.098	0.78
25	0.024	-
26	0.012	-
27	0.098	-
28	0.195	-
29	0.195	0.78
30	0.098	-
31	0.195	0.78
32	0.098	0.39
33	0.024	-
34	0.098	-
35	0.049	0.39
36	0.049	0.39
37	0.098	0.78
38	0.195	1.56
39	0.195	0.39
40	0.098	0.78
41	0.39	1.56
42	0.049	0.39

- to be continued -

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Table 1 (Continue)

Test compounds	Microorganisms	
	A	B
43	0.098	0.39
44	0.78	0.78
45	0.195	1.56
46	0.098	1.56
47	0.098	1.56
48	0.098	0.39
49	0.024	0.78

Preparation 1

An injection preparation is prepared from the following components.

Components	Amount
7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo quinoline-3-carboxylic acid	200 mg
Glucose	250 mg
Distilled water for injection	q.s.
Totally	5 ml

7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid and glucose are dissolved in distilled water for injection, and the solution is added to a 5 ml ampoule, which is purged with nitrogen gas and then subjected to sterilization at 121°C for 15 minutes to give an injection preparation.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Preparation 2

Film coated tablets are prepared from the following components.

Components	Amount
7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo quinoline-3-carboxylic acid	100 g
Avicel (tradename of microcrystalline cellulose, manufactured by Asahi Chemical Industry Co., Ltd., Japan)	40 g
Corn starch	30 g
Magnesium stearate	2 g
TC-5 (tradename of hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, manufactured by The Shin-Etsu Chemical Co., Ltd., Japan)	10 g
Polyethylene glycol 6000	3 g
Castor oil	40 g
Ethanol	40 g

7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, Avicel, corn starch and magnesium stearate are mixed and kneaded and the mixture is tabletted using a conventional pounder (R 10 mm) for sugar coating (manufactured by Kikusui Seisakusho Co., Ltd., Japan). The tablets thus obtained are coated with a film coating agent consisting of TC-5, polyethylene glycol 6000, castor oil and ethanol to give film coated tablets.

Preparation 3

An ointment is prepared from the following components.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Components	Amount
7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quioline-3-carboxylic acid	2 g
Purified lanolin	5 g
Bleached beeswax	5 g
White vaseline	88 g
Totally	100 g

Bleached beeswax is made liquid by heating, and thereto are added 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, purified lanolin and while vaseline, and the mixture is heated until it becomes liquid. The mixture is stirred until it is solidified to give an ointment.

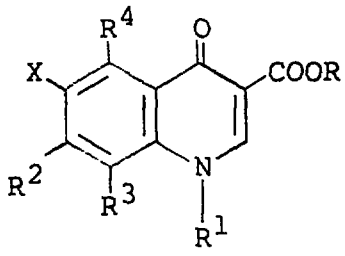
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

What is claimed is:

1. A compound of the formula:



[1]

wherein R^1 is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a halogen atom; a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring; a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkanoyloxy or hydroxy; a (lower) alkenyl; or thienyl,

R^2 is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted,

R^3 is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl, or a halogen atom,

R^4 is a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom,

R is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl,

R^1 and R^3 may be taken together to form the group :

$$-\underset{\displaystyle R^{31}}{\underset{|}{CH}}-CH_2-O-$$

wherein R^{31} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and

X is a halogen atom,

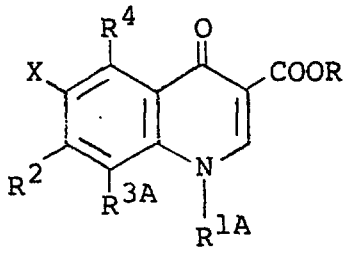
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

provided that R^3 and R^4 are not simultaneously halogen atom, and that when R^3 is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a lower alkyl,

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

2. The compound according to claim 1, which is a compound of the formula:



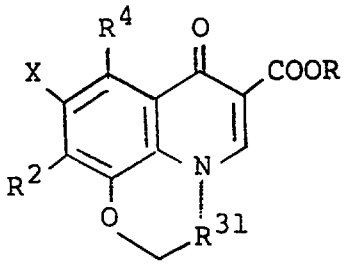
[1]

wherein R^{1A} is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a halogen atom, a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring, a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkanoyloxy or hydroxy, a (lower) alkenyl or thienyl, R^2 is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl, or a halogen atom, R^4 is a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom, R is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and X is a halogen atom, provided that R^3 and R^4 are not simultaneously halogen atom, and that when R^3 is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a lower alkyl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

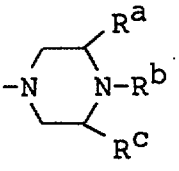
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

3. The compound according to claim 1, which is a compound of the formula:



[1]

wherein R^2 is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^4 is a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom, R is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^{31} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and X is a halogen atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

4. The compound according to claim 3, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom, a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which is substituted by a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R is hydrogen atom; R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group; X is fluorine atom; and R^{31} is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is a phenyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a C_1-C_6 alkoxy group, a halogen atom

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

* C L M S *

and hydroxy group, or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group which may by substituted by a halogen atom, a C_2-C_6 alkanoyloxy group or hydroxy group, R is hydrogen atom, and X is fluorine atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

6. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is a C_2-C_6 alkenyl group or thienyl group, R is hydrogen atom, and X is fluorine atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

7. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

8. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^4 is a halogen atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

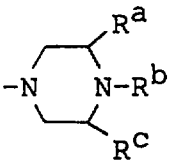
9. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} and R^4 are each a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperazinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)-

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

alkyl group, and a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which may be substituted by phenyl group or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

11. The compound according to claim 10, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom, a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which is substituted by a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

12. The compound according to claim 11, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

13. The compound according to claim 11, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

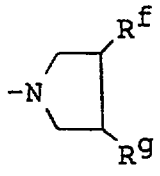
14. The compound according to claim 12 or claim 13, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A}

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-pyrrolidinyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of an amino which may have 1 or 2 susbtituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, an amino-(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 to 2 substitents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, and a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

16 The compound according to claim 15, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^f is an amino which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, or an amino(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, R^g is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

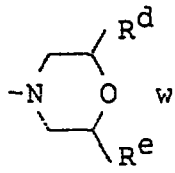
17. The compound according to claim 16, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom, and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

18. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A}

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

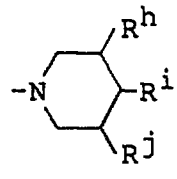
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a morpholino group which may have 1 to 3 substituents of C_1-C_6 alkyl groups, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

19. The compound according to claim 18, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^d is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^e is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20. The compound according to claim 19, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

21. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperidinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, hydroxy, a halogen atom and oxo group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

22. The compound according to claim 21, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^h is hydrogen

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^i is hydrogen atom, hydroxy, a halogen atom or oxo group, R^j is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group; R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom; and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

23. The compound according to claim 22, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

24. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is 1,4-diazobicyclo[4.3.0]nonan-4-yl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

25. The compound according to claim 24, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

26. The compound according to claim 25, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

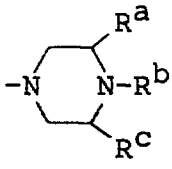
27. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

28. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

group, and R^2 is a 1-piperazinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, and a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which may substituted by phenyl or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

29. The compound according to claim 28, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom, a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which is substituted by a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

30. The compound according to claim 29, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

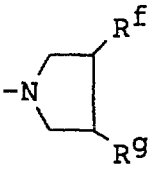
31. The compound according to claim 30, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

32. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

group, and R^2 is a 1-pyrrolidinyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of an amino which may have 1 or 2 susbtituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, an amino(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 to 2 substitents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, and a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

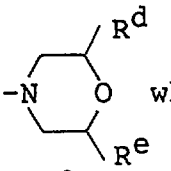
33 The compound according to claim 32, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^f is an amino which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, or an amino(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, R^g is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

34. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a morpholino group which may have 1 to 3 substituents of C_1-C_6 alkyl groups, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

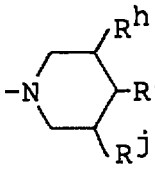
35. The compound according to claim 34, wherein R^2

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

is a group of the formula:  wherein R^d is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^e is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

36. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperidinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, hydroxy, a halogen atom and oxo group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

37. The compound according to claim 36, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^h is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^i is hydrogen atom, hydroxy, a halogen atom or oxo group, R^j is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group; and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

38. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is 1,4-diazobicyclo[4.3.0]nonan-4-yl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

* C L M S *

39. The compound according to any one of claims 33, 35, 37 and 38, wherein R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

40. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

41. 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

42. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

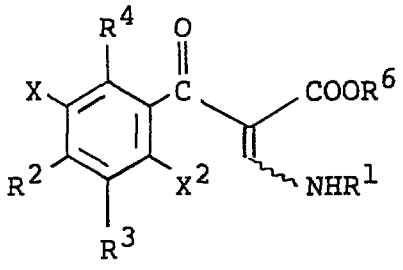
43. The compound according to claim 1, which is a member selected from the group consisting of 7-(1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, 7-(3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid, 7-(3-amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid, and 3S(-)-10-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-9-fluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1.4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylic acid.

44. A process for preparing the compound as set forth in claim 1, which comprises

(a) subjecting a compound of the formula:

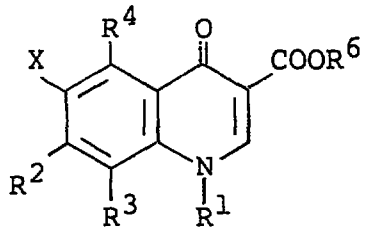
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED



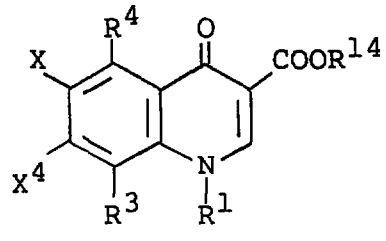
wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, X^2 is a halogen atom, and R^6 is a lower alkyl,

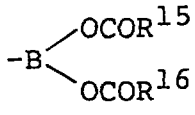
to cyclization reaction to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^6 is as defined above, optionally followed by hydrolysis of the above compound,

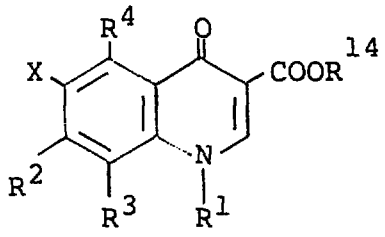
(b) reacting a compound of the formula:

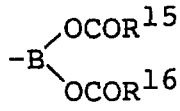


wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, X^4 is a halogen atom, and R^{14} is hydrogen atom or a group of the formula:  (wherein R^{15} and R^{16} are each an alkyl), with a compound of the formula: R^2H wherein R^2 is as defined in claim 1 to give a compound of the formula:

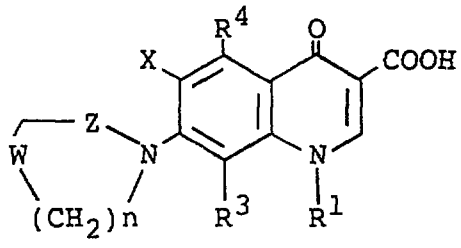
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED



wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{14} is as defined above, optionally followed by converting the compound where R^{14} is a group of the formula:  into a compound where R^{14} is hydrogen atom,

(c) reacting a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, either Z or W is $-CH_2-$ and the other is -NH, n is an integer of 1 to 3, with a compound of the formula:

$$R^{17}X^5$$

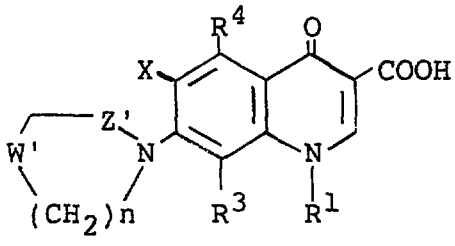
wherein R^{17} is a (lower) alkyl; a cycloalkyl; a phenyl (lower) alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a (lower) alkoxy, nitro or amino; a phenyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkyl or a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a pyridyl; a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, amino, a (lower) alkoxy and a halogen atom, said amino being optionally

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a cycloalkyl or a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms; a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; a phenyl(lower)alkoxy-carbonyl; an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl-(lower)alkyl; a carboxy(lower)alkyl; an anilinocarbonyl-(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 halogen atoms; a sulfo(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkenyl or a (lower) alkynyl, and X^5 is a halogen atom,

to give a compound of the formula:

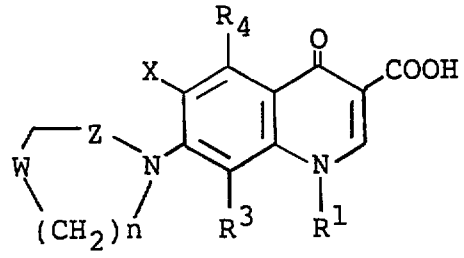


wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, n is as defined above, and either Z' or W' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is $-NR^{17}$ (R^{17} is as defined above),

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

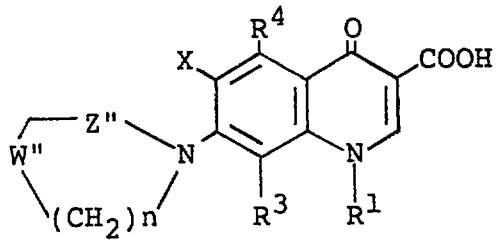
(d) reacting a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and W, Z and n are as defined above, with a compound of the formula:

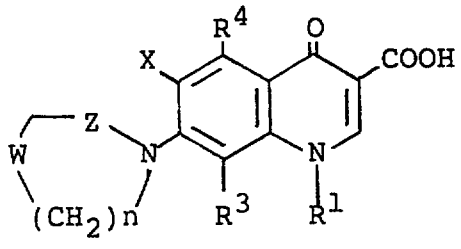
$$R^{18}COR^{19}$$

wherein R^{18} and R^{19} are each hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, n is as defined above, and either Z" or W" is $-CH_2-$ and the other is $-N-CH\begin{matrix}R^{18}\\R^{19}\end{matrix}$ (R^{18} and R^{19} are as defined above),

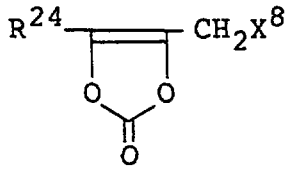
(e) reacting a compound of the formula:



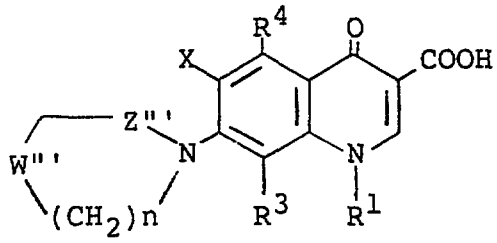
wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and W, Z and n are as defined above, with a compound of the formula:

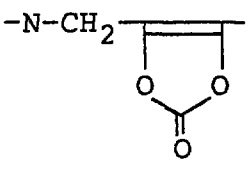
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

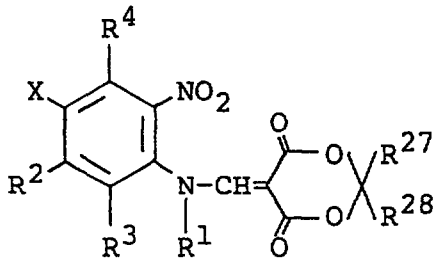


wherein R^{24} is phenyl, a lower alkyl or hydrogen atom, X^8 is a halogen atom, to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, n is as defined above, either Z"' or W"' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is a group:  (R^{24} is as defined above),

(f) subjecting a compound of the formula:

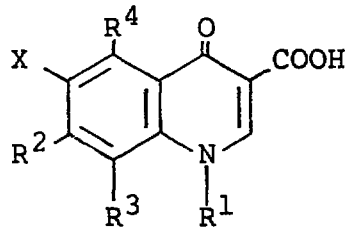


wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X is as defined in claim 1, and R^{26} and R^{27} are each a lower alkyl,

to a cyclization reaction to give a compound of the formula:

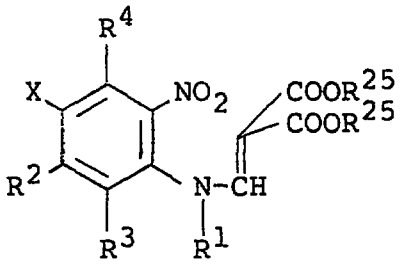
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED



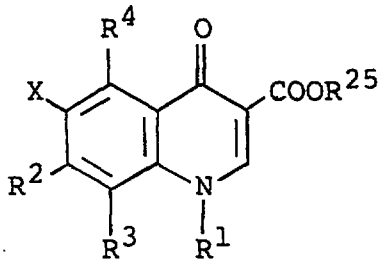
wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1,

(g) subjecting a compound of the formula:



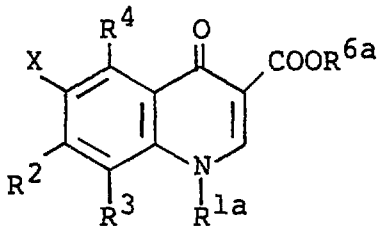
wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{25} is a lower alkyl,

to cyclization reaction to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as derined in claim 1, and R^{24} are as defined above, optionally followed by hydrolysis thereof,

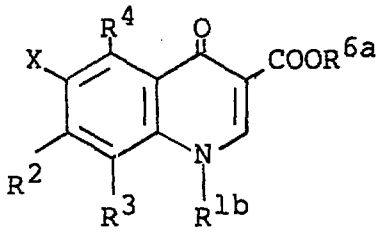
(h) reacting a compound of the formula:



This Sheet Has Been Replaced

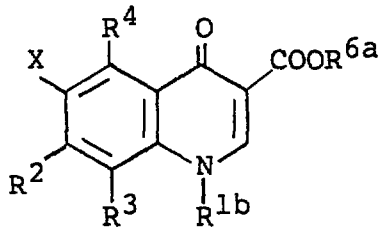
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1a} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 hydroxy groups, and R^{6a} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, with a (lower) alkanoylating agent, to give a compound of the formula:



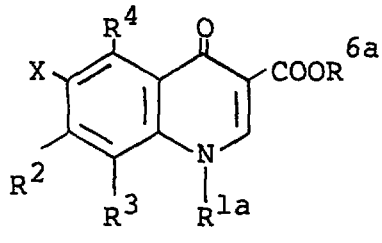
wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{6a} is as defined above, and R^{1b} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 (lower) alkanoyloxy groups,

(i) subjecting a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1b} and R^{6a} are as defined above,

to hydrolysis to give a compound of the formula:

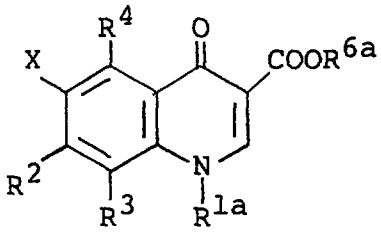


wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1a} and R^{6a} are as defined above,

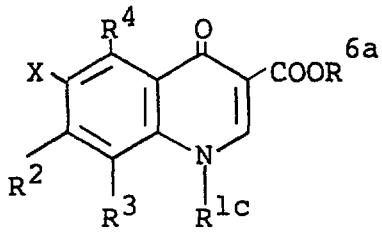
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

(j) reacting a compound of the formula:

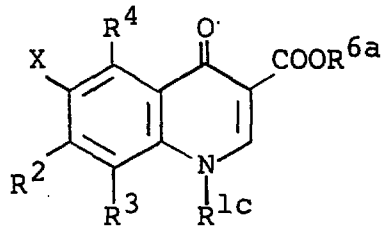


wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1a} and R^{6a} are as defined above, with a halogenating agent, to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{6a} is as defined above, and R^{1c} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 halogen atoms,

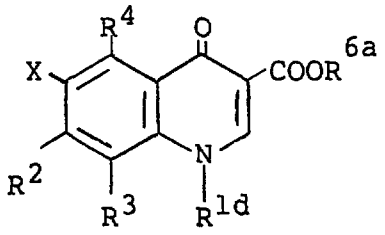
(k) treating a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1c} and R^{6a} are as defined above, with a basic compound to give a compound of the formula:

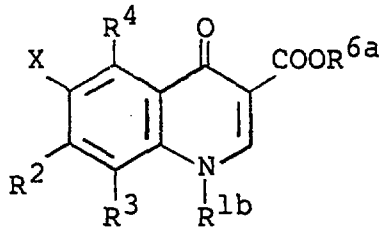
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

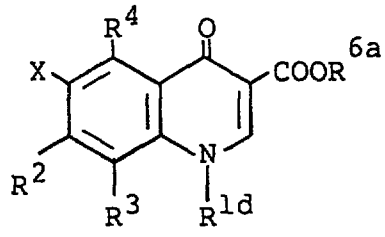


wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{6a} is as defined above, and R^{1d} is a (lower) alkenyl,

(l) converting a compound of the formula:

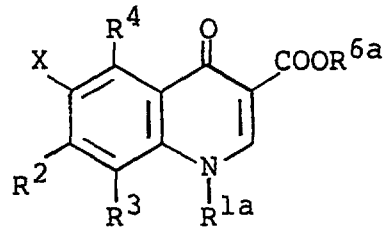


wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1b} and R^{6a} are as defined above, to a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1d} and R^{6a} are as defined above, or

(m) converting a compound of the formula:

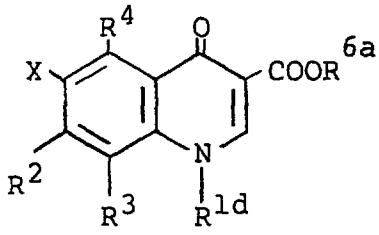


wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1a} and R^{6a} are as defined above, in the presence of an acid to

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1d} and R^{6a} are as defined above,

45. An antimicrobial composition which comprises as an essential active ingredient an effective amount of a compound as set forth in claim 1.

46. Use of the compound as set forth in claim 1 as an antimicrobial agent.

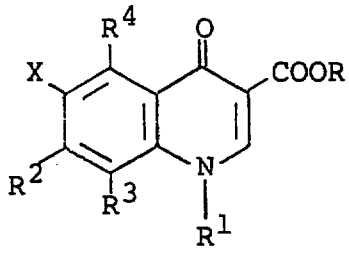
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

Abstract of the Disclosure:

BENZOHETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDSE

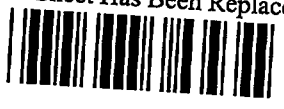
Novel 4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid compounds of the formula:



[1]

wherein R^1 is cyclopropyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents of alkyl and halogen; phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents of alkoxy, halogen and OH; alkyl which may be substituted by halogen, alkanoyloxy or OH; alkenyl; or thienyl, R^2 is 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^3 is H, alkyl or halogen, R^4 is alkyl or halogen, R is H or alkyl, R^1 and R^3 may be taken together to form $-\underset{\underset{R^{31}}{|}}{CH}-CH_2-O-$ wherein R^{31} is H or alkyl, and X is halogen, provided that R^3 and R^4 are not simultaneously halogen, and that when R^3 is H, R^4 is alkyl, and salts thereof, said compounds having excellent antimicrobial activity and hence being useful as an antimicrobial agent, and a pharmaceutical composition containing said compound as an active ingredient.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



96072.52-1

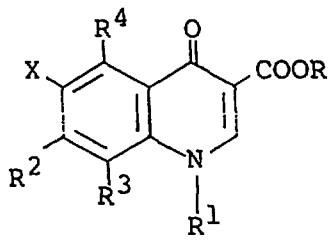
IPQ

REPLACEMENT SHEET

18 NOV 1996

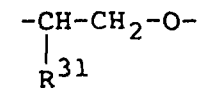
BENZOHETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDS

The present invention relates to novel antimicrobial benzoheterocyclic compounds of the formula [1]:



[1]

wherein R^1 is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a halogen atom, a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring, a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkanoyloxy or hydroxy, a (lower) alkenyl or thienyl, R^2 is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^3 is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl, or a halogen atom, R^4 is a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom, R is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^1 and R^3 may be taken together to form the group :



This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

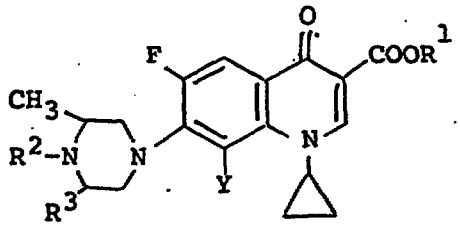
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

wherein R^{31} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and X is a halogen atom, provided that R^3 and R^4 are not simultaneously halogen atom, and that when R^3 is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a lower alkyl, and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

The benzoheterocyclic compounds of the formula [1] and salts thereof have excellent antibacterial activities against various gram positive and gram negative bacteria, and are useful for the treatment of various infectious diseases induced by various bacteria in human, other animals and fish and are also useful as an external antimicrobial or disinfectant agent for medical instruments or the like.

Prior art

There are many literatures which disclose 4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid derivaties useful as anti-bacterial agents. Among these literatures, European Patent Publication No. 178388 discloses 1-cyclopropyl-7-piperazino-dihydroquinoline carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:

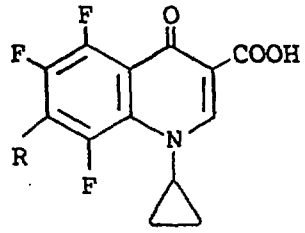


wherein R^1 is H or lower alkyl, R^2 is H, methyl, p-nitro(or amino)-benzyl, R^3 is H, methyl, or aminomethyl, and Y is Cl or F.

Japanese Patent First Publication (Kokai) No.

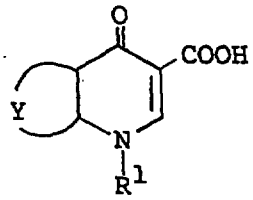
REPLACEMENT SHEET

469/1987 discloses 1-cyclopropyl-dihydroquinoline carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:



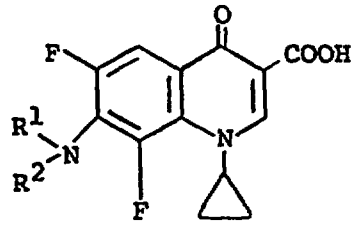
wherein R is substituted or unsubstituted pyrrolidinyl or piperazinyl.

WO 8606630 discloses 1-cycloalkyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:



wherein R^1 is C_3-C_6 cycloalkyl, Y is optionally substituted 6-membered aromatic group.

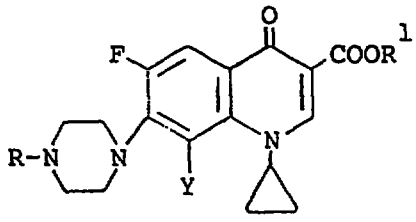
U.S. Patent 4,556,658 discloses 7-amino-1-cyclopropyl-3-quinoline carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:



wherein R^1 and R^2 are each substituted or unsubstituted alkyl, or both may combine together with N atom to form a 5- or 6-membered heterocyclic ring.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Belgian Patent 899399 discloses 1-cyclopropyl-7-piperazinyl-dihydroquinoline carboxylic acid derivatives of the formula:



wherein R is H, methyl, or p-nitro(or amino)-benzyl, R^1 is H or lower alkyl, and Y is Cl, F, methyl.

Similar 1-substituted-7-heterocyclic group-substituted dihydroquinoline carboxylic acid derivatives are also disclosed in other many literatures.

However, these known literatures do not disclose any compound having an alkyl substituent at 5-position.

Brief Description of the Invention

The object of the present invention is to provide novel benzoheterocyclic compounds of the formula [1] and salts thereof which have excellent antimicrobial activity and excellent absorbability. Another object of the invention is to provide a pharmaceutical composition containing as an active ingredient a compound of the formula [1] or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof, which is useful for the treatment of various infectious diseases. These and other objects of the invention will be apparent to persons skilled in the art from the following description.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Detailed Description of the Invention

The novel benzoheterocyclic compounds of the present invention have the formula [1] as mentioned above and include pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In the specification, the term "a halogen atom" includes fluorine, chlorine, bromine or iodine atom.

The term "a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a halogen atom" includes cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl and a halogen atom, such as cyclopropyl, 2-fluoro-1-cyclopropyl, 2-chloro-1-cyclopropyl, 2-bromo-1-cyclopropyl, 2-iodo-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2-dichloro-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2-dibromo-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2,3-trichloro-1-cyclopropyl, 2-methyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-ethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-propyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-butyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-pentyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-hexyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2-dimethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2,3-dimethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2,3-trimethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-fluoro-3-methyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2,2-diethyl-1-cyclopropyl, 2-methyl-3-propyl-1-cyclopropyl, and the like.

The term "a (lower) alkyl" includes straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as methyl, ethyl, propyl, isopropyl, butyl, tert-butyl, pentyl, hexyl, etc.

The term "a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be substituted"

REPLACEMENT SHEET
16 NOV 1996

denotes a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; a cycloalkyl; a phenyl (lower) alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a lower alkoxy, nitro or amino; a phenyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom or a (lower) alkyl optionally substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a pyridyl; a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, an amino which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a cycloalkyl or a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, a (lower) alkoxy and a halogen atom; a (lower) alkynyl; a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms; a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl(lower)alkyl; a carboxy(lower)alkyl; an anilinocarbonyl(lower)alkyl; an amino which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a phenyl(lower)alkyl, a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl or a (lower) alkanoyl; hydroxy; a (lower) alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; phthalide; a 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms; a sulfo(lower)alkyl; oxo; a (lower) alkoxy; a (lower) alkenyl; a halogen atom; a

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

(lower) alkanoyloxy; a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl; a cycloalkylamino; a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethylamino which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl; a (lower) alkylthio; or thio,

and includes more specifically 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic rings which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; a C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl; a phenylalkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, nitro or amino and the alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; a phenyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a halogen atom or by a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a pyridyl; an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents selected from the group consiting of hydroxy, a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a straight or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl, a C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl and a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy group and a halogen atom; a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkynyl; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl which may be

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms; a straight chain or branched chain (C_2-C_6)alkenyl-carbonyl substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms or carboxy; a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl; an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl group; a phenylalkoxycarbonyl in which alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy; a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 aminoalkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenylalkoxycarbonyl in which alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy; an alkoxycarbonylalkyl in which alkoxy and alkyl moieties are straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy and alkyl, respectively; a carboxyalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; an anilino-carbonylalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a phenylalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl, or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl; hydroxy; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; phthalide; a 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms; a sulfoalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl; oxo; a straight chain

REPLACEMENT SHEET

or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy; a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkenyl; a halogen atom; a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkanoyloxy; a C_3-C_8 cycloalkylamino; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkylthio; thio; a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6alkyl; and a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethylamino which may be substituted by phenyl or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl , such as, for example, piperazinyl, piperidinyl, pyrrolidinyl, homopiperazinyl, morpholino, thiomorpholino, 1,2,5,6-tetrahydropyridyl, imidazolyl, 1,4-diazabicyclo-[4.3.0]nonan-4-yl, thiomorpholino-4-oxide, thiomorpholino-4,4-dioxide, pyrazolidinyl, hexahydropyridazinyl, pyridyl, thiazolidinyl, 2-thio-1-imidazolidinyl, 2-oxo-1-imidazolidinyl, 3,7-diazabicyclo[4.3.0]nonan-3-yl, 4-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-propyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-t-butyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 2,5-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 2,4,5-trimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3,4,5-trimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-ethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-propyl-4-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 2-n-butyl-5-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 2-pentyl-5-hexyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-formyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-propionyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-butyryl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentanoyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexanoyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(α,α,α-trifluoroacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(β,β,β-trifluoro-α,α-difluoropropionyl)-1-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

piperazinyl, 4-(γ,γ,γ-trifluoro-β,β-difluoro-α,α-difluorobutyryl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(α,α-dichloroacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(α-bromoacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(α-iodoacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(β-fluoropropionyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(β-fluoro-α-fluoropropionyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-fluorohexanoyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-chloropentanoyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-benzyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-phenylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(1-phenylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-phenylpropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-phenylbutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-phenylpentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-phenylhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-methyl-3-phenylpropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-amino-1-piperazinyl, 3-amino-1-piperazinyl, 2-amino-1-piperazinyl, 4-methylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-dimethylamino-1-piperazinyl, 2-ethylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-propylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-t-butylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-pentylamino-1-piperazinyl, 2-hexylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-diethylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-n-butylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(N-methyl-N-pentylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 2-(N-ethyl-N-hexylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-formylamino-1-piperazinyl, 2-propionylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-butyrylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-pentanoylamino-1-piperazinyl, 2-hexanoylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-acetylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(N-ethyl-N-propionylamino)-1-piperazinyl, 4-hydroxy-1-piperazinyl, 3-hydroxy-1-piperazinyl, 2-hydroxy-1-piperazinyl, 4-methylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

propylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-n-butylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-trifluoromethylsulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-fluoroethylsulfonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-fluoropropylsulfonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4,4,4-trifluorobutylsulfonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-sulfonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(phthalid-3-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3,4-dibromo-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3,4-dichloro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2(5H)-furanon-5-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-chloro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-formyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetyl-3-ethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetyl-2-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-methyl-3-hydroxymethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-hydroxymethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethyl-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(3-hydroxypropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-methyl-2-(4-hydroxybutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethyl-3-(5-hydroxypentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(6-hydroxyhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-methoxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-ethoxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-propoxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-n-butoxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-pentyloxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hexyloxybenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-nitrobenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-nitrobenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-aminobenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-aminobenzyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclopropyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclobutyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclopentyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclohexyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cycloheptyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclooctyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-phenyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-fluorophenyl)-1-

REPLACEMENT SHEET

piperazinyl, 4-(3-bromophenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-chlorophenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-iodophenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-methylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-ethylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-propylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-n-butylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-pentylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hexylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-trifluoromethylphenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-[3-(2-chloroethyl)phenyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-[2-(3,3-dibromopropyl)phenyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-[4-(4-chlorobutyl)phenyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-hydroxymethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-hydroxypropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-chloropropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(bromomethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-fluoroethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-chlorobutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-fluoropentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2,3-dichlorohexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(trifluoromethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-aminomethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-ethylaminoethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-propylaminobutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-n-butylaminopentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-pentylaminohexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-propylaminomethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-diethylaminoethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(methoxymethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(ethoxymethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-propoxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-butoxypropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-pentyloxybutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-hexyloxypentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-methoxyhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-propargyl-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-butynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-butynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(1-methyl-2-propynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-pentynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hexynyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethynyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-vinyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-allyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-butenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-butenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(1-methylallyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-pentenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-hexenyl)-1-piperazinyl, 2-oxo-1-piperazinyl, 3-oxo-1-piperazinyl, 4-oxo-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4,4-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-pyridyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-pyridyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-pyridyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-carbamoyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-dimethylamino-carbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-propylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-butylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexyl-aminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-diethylaminocarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-propylaminocarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-methoxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethoxy-carbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-propoxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-tert-butoxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-pentyloxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-hexyloxycarbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-benzyloxy-carbonyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-phenylethoxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-phenylpropoxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-phenylbutoxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-phenylpentyl-oxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-phenylhexyloxycarbonyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-aminoacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-amino-propionyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-aminobutyryl)-1-piperazinyl,

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

4-(5-aminopentanoyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-aminohexanoyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-benzyloxycarbonylaminoacetyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-[2-(2-phenylethoxycarbonylamino)acetyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-[2-(3-phenylpropoxycarbonylamino)acetyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-[2-(4-phenylbutoxycarbonylamino)acetyl]-1-piperazinyl, 4-methoxycarbonylmethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-ethoxycarbonylmethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-ethoxycarbonylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-propoxycarbonylpropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-butoxycarbonylbutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-pentyloxycarbonylpentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-hexyloxycarbonylhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-carbonylmethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-carboxyethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-carboxypropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-carboxybutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-carboxypentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-carboxyhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(anilinocarbonylmethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-anilinocarbonylethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-anilinocarbonylpropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(4-anilinocarbonylbutyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-anilinocarbonylpentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(6-anilinocarbonylhexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-carboxyacryloyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-carboxy-2,3-dichloroacryloyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-methyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-ethyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-propyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-n-butyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-pentyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-methoxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-ethoxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-propoxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-n-butoxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-pentyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-acetyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-propionyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-

REPLACEMENT SHEET

butyryloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-pentanoyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexanoyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-methoxycarbonyloxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-ethoxycarbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-propoxy-carbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-n-butoxycarbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-pentyloxycarbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexyloxycarbonyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-benzyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-(2-phenylethyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(1-phenylethyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(3-phenyl-propyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(4-phenylbutyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(5-phenylpentyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(6-phenylhexyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-hydroxy-1-piperidinyl, 3-hydroxy-1-piperidinyl, 2-hydroxy-1-piperidinyl, 4-amino-1-piperidinyl, 3-amino-1-piperidinyl, 2-amino-1-piperidinyl, 4-dimethylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-methylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-ethylamino-1-piperidinyl, 2-propylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-n-butylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-pentylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-hexylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-diethylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-(N-methyl-N-propylamino)-1-piperidinyl, 4-carbamoyl-1-piperidinyl, 3-carbamoyl-1-piperidinyl, 3,5-dimethyl-1-piperidinyl, 2,5-dimethyl-1-piperidinyl, 4-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 3-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 3-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-amino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-amino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-dimethylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-ethylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-propylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-n-butylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pentylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-hexylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-diethylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-methyl-N-propylamino)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(N-ethyl-N-n-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

butylamino)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-acetylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-propionylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-butyrylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pentanoylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-hexanoylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-hydroxymethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(2-hydroxyethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(3-hydroxypropyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(4-hydroxybutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(5-hydroxypentyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(6-hydroxyhexyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(2-aminoethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(3-aminopropyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(4-aminobutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(5-aminopentyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(6-aminohexyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(methylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(2-ethylaminoethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(3-propylaminopropyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(4-n-butylaminobutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(5-pentylaminopentyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(6-hexylaminohexyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(dimethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 2-(N-methyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-ethyl-N-n-butylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylaminomethyl-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylaminomethyl-4-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylamino-4-chloro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylaminomethyl-4-chloro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-methylamino-4-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-ethylaminomethyl-4-ethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-propylaminomethyl-2-propyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-n-butylaminomethyl-2-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-pentylaminomethyl-2-n-butyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-hexylaminomethyl-2-chloro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-propylamino-2-chloro-1-pyrrolidin-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

yl, 4-n-butylamino-2-hexyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-pentylamino-4-ethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-hexylamino-4-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-methyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-ethyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-propyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-n-butyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-pentyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-hexyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-formyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-acetyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-propionyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-butyryl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-pentanoyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 4-hexanoyl-1-homopiperazinyl, 2-methyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-ethyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-propyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-n-butyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-pentyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-hexyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-formyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-acetyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-propionyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-butyryl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-pentanoyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-hexanoyl-1-hexahydropyridazyl, 2-methyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-ethyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-propyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-n-butyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-pentyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-hexyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-formyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-acetyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-propionyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-butyryl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-pentanoyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 2-hexanoyl-1-pyrazolidinyl, 3,5-dimethylmorpholino, 3-methylmorpholino, 3-ethylmorpholino, 2-propylmorpholino, 3-n-butylmorpholino, 3-pentyl-5-methylmorpholino, 3-hexyl-5-ethylmorpholino, 3-aminomethylmorpholino, 3-methylaminomethylmorpholino, 2-ethylaminomethylmorpholino, 3-propylaminomethylmorpholino, 3-n-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 MAR 1996

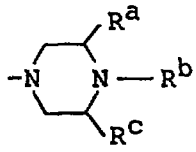
butylaminomethylmorpholino, 2-pentylaminomethylmorpholino, 3-hexylaminomethylmorpholino, 3-(2-methylaminoethyl)-morpholino, 3-(3-methylaminopropyl)morpholino, 3-(4-methylaminobutyl)morpholino, 2-(5-methylaminopentyl)-morpholino, 3-(6-methylaminohexyl)morpholino, 4-(5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-tert-butyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(5-phenyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-(5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-(5-phenyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylaminomorpholino, 3,5-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3,3-dimethyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-acetyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-ethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-ethyl-4-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-trifluoromethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-(fluoro-methyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-methylthio-1-piperazinyl, 4-methylthio-1-piperazinyl, 3-ethylthio-1-piperazinyl, 3-methylthiomorpholino, 4-fluoro-1-piperidinyl, 3-fluoro-1-piperazinyl, 3-chloro-1-piperazinyl, 3-amino-4-fluoro-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-amino-4-hydroxy-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-amino-4-methoxy-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-amino-4-fluoro-1-piperidinyl, 3-amino-4-hydroxy-1-piperidinyl, 3-amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-benzyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-fluoro-methylmorpholino, 3-chloromethylmorpholino, 4-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 3-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 2-oxo-1-piperidinyl, 3-acetylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-ethyl-N-acetylamino)-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

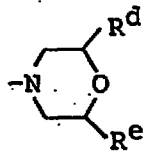
methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-t-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-cyclopropylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-cyclopropylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-cyclopentylamino-1-piperazinyl, 4-cyclohexylamino-1-piperazinyl, 3-cycloheptylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-cyclooctylamino-1-piperidinyl, 4-cyclopropylamino-1-piperidinyl, 3-cyclopropylaminomorpholino, 4-thio-1-piperidinyl, 3-thio-1-piperazinyl, 3-thiomorpholino, 4-cyclopropylaminomethyl-1-piperazinyl, 3-cyclopropylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-cyclopropylaminomethyl-1-piperidinyl, 3-cyclopropylaminomethylmorpholino, 4-(2-cyclopentylaminoethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-cyclohexylaminopropyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(4-cyclobutylaminobutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(5-cyclooctylaminopentyl)-1-piperidinyl, 4-(6-cyclopropylaminohexyl)morpholino, 3-acetylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(2-propionylaminoethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(3-butyrylaminopropyl)-1-piperidinyl, 3-(4-pentanoylaminobutyl)morpholino, 4-(5-hexanoylaminopentyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(6-acetylaminohexyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(N-acetyl-N-ethylamino)methyl-1-piperazinyl, 4-(N-cyclopropyl-N-acetylamino)methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(methoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-1-piperazinyl, 4-(2-ethoxycarbonylaminoethyl)-1-piperidinyl, 3-(3-propoxycarbonylaminopropyl)morpholino, 3-(4-pentyloxycarbonylaminobutyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(5-hexyloxycarbonylaminopentyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(6-t-butoxycarbonylaminohexyl)-1-piperazinyl, 3-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

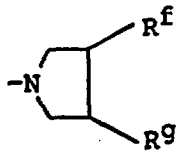
methylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 3-(N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl, 4-(N-methoxycarbonyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl)-1-piperazinyl and 4-(N-propoxycarbonyl-N-cyclohexylaminomethyl)-1-piperidinyl. The term "a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be substituted" also includes the group represented by the formula:



wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^b is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a phenyl(lower)alkyl, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which is substituted by a (lower) alkyl, and R^c is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl; the group represented by the formula:



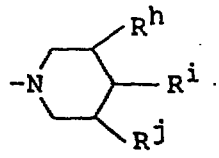
wherein R^d is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and R^e is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl; the group represented by the formula:



wherein R^f is an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents selected from the group consiting of a (lower)

REPLACEMENT SHEET

alkyl and a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, or a amino(lower)alkyl which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, R^g is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl; the group represented by the formula:



wherein R^h is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^i is hydrogen atom, hydroxy, a halogen atom or oxo, and R^j is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkly; and the like.

The term "a cycloalkyl" includes C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl such as cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclohexyl, cycloheptyl or cyclooctyl.

The term "a phenyl (lower) alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a (lower) alkoxy, nitro or amino" includes phenylalkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, nitro or amino and the alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as benzyl, 2-phenylethyl, 1-phenylethyl, 3-phenylpropyl, 4-phenylbutyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethyl, 5-phenylpentyl, 6-phenylhexyl, 2-methyl-3-phenylpropyl, 4-methoxybenzyl, 3-ethoxybenzyl, 2-propoxybenzyl, 4-n-butoxybenzyl, 3-pentyloxybenzyl, 2-hexyloxybenzyl, 4-nitrobenzyl, 3-nitrobenzyl, 4-aminobenzyl, 2-aminobenzyl, 2-(4-methoxyphenyl)ethyl, 1-(3-ethoxyphenyl)ethyl, 3-(2-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

propoxyphenyl)propyl, 4-(4-n-butoxyphenyl)butyl, 5-(2-nitrophenyl)pentyl or 6-(3-aminophenyl)hexyl.

The term "a phenyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom or a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms" includes phenyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a halogen atom or by a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms, such as phenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 3-bromophenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 4-iodophenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 3-ethylphenyl, 2-propylphenyl, 4-n-butylphenyl, 3-pentylphenyl, 2-hexylphenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 3-(2-chloroethyl)phenyl, 2-(3,3-dibromopropyl)phenyl, 4-(4-chlorobutyl)phenyl, 3-(5-iodopentyl)phenyl, 4-(6-fluorohexyl)phenyl, 2-(1,2,2-trifluoroethyl)phenyl or 4-(2,2,2-trifluoroethyl)phenyl.

The term "a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, an amino which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a cycloalkyl or a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, a (lower) alkoxy and a halogen atom" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy; an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents selected from the group consisting of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl, a C_3-C_8 cycloalkyl and a straight

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl; a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy and a halogen atom, such as hyroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 1-hyroxyethyl, 3-hydroxypropyl, 4-hydroxybutyl, 5-hyroxypentyl, 6-hydroxyhexyl, 3-chloropropyl, bromomethyl, 2-fluoroethyl, 4-chlorobutyl, 3-fluoropentyl, 2,3-dichlorohexyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, aminomethyl, 2-aminoethyl, 1-aminoethyl, 3-aminopropyl, 4-aminobutyl, 5-aminopentyl, 6-aminohexyl, 3-dimethylaminopropyl, 2-ethylaminoethyl, 4-propylaminobutyl, 5-n-butylaminopentyl, 6-pentylaminohexyl, methylaminomethyl, diethylaminomethyl, 2-dipropylaminoethyl, 1-di-n-butylaminoethyl, 3-dipentylaminopropyl, 4-dihexylaminobutyl, N-methyl-N-ethylaminomethyl, N-methyl-N-propylaminomethyl, methoxymethyl, ethoxymethyl, 2-propoxyethyl, 3-butoxypropyl, 4-pentyloxybutyl, 5-hexyloxypentyl, 6-methoxyhexyl, propoxymetyl, 1-ethoxyethyl, 2-hexyloxyethyl, formylaminomethyl, acetylaminomethyl, 2-propanoylaminoethyl, 3-butyrylaminopropyl, 4-pentanoylaminobutyl, 5-hexanoylaminopentyl, 6-acetylaminohexyl, propanoylaminomethyl, 1-acetylaminoethyl, 2-hexanoylaminoethyl, N-acetyl-N-methylaminomethyl, N-acetyl-N-ethylaminomethyl, N-acetyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl, N,N-dicyclopropylaminomethyl, cyclopropylaminomethyl, 2-cyclobutylaminoethyl, 3-cyclopentylaminopropyl, 1-cyclopropylaminoethyl, 2-cyclopropylaminoethyl, aminopropyl, 4-cyclohexylaminobutyl, 5-cycloheptylaminopentyl, 6-cyclooctylaminohexyl, N-methyl-N-

REPLACEMENT SHEET

cyclopropylaminomethyl, N-ethyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl, methoxycarbonylaminomethyl, 2-ethoxycarbonylaminoethyl, 3-propoxycarbonylaminopropyl, 4-t-butoxycarbonylaminobutyl, 5-pentyloxycarbonylaminopentyl, 6-hexyloxycarbonylaminohexyl, t-butoxycarbonylaminomethyl, 2-t-butoxycarbonylaminoethyl, 1-t-butoxycarbonylaminoethyl, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-methyl-aminomethyl, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylaminomethyl or N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-cyclopropylaminomethyl.

The term "a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms, such as formyl, acetyl, propionyl, butyryl, pentanoyl, hexanoyl, α,α,α-trifluoroacetyl, β,β,β-trifluoro-α,α-difluoropropionyl, γ,γ,γ-trifluoro-β,β-difluoro-α,α-difluorobutyryl, α,α-dichloroacetyl, α-bromoacetyl, α-iodoacetyl, β-fluoropropionyl, β-fluoro-α-fluoropropionyl, 6-fluorohexanoyl or 4-chloropentanoyl, 3,3,3-trifluoropropionyl.

The term "a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy" includes a straight chain or branched chain (C_2-C_6)alkenyl-carbonyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy, such as 3-carboxyacryloyl, 3-carboxy-2,3-dichloroacryloyl, 3-carboxy-2,3-dibromoacryloyl, 4-carboxycrotonoyl, 4-carboxyisocrotonoyl, 5-carboxy-3-pentenoyl, 6-carboxy-4-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

hexenoyl, 4-carboxy-3-fluorocrotonoyl or 5-carboxy-3,4-dichloro-3-hexenoyl.

The term "a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl" includes a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl, such as methoxycarbonyl, ethoxycarbonyl, propoxycarbonyl, isopropoxycarbonyl, butoxycarbonyl, tert-butoxycarbonyl, pentyloxycarbonyl or hexyloxycarbonyl.

The term "an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl" includes aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as carbamoyl, methylaminocarbonyl, ethylaminocarbonyl, propylaminocarbonyl, n-butylamino-carbonyl, pentylaminocarbonyl, hexylaminocarbonyl, dimethyl-aminocarbonyl, diethylaminocarbonyl, dipropylaminocarbonyl, dipentylaminocarbonyl, dihexylaminocarbonyl, N-methyl-N-propylaminocarbonyl, N-methyl-N-tert-butylaminocarbonyl or N-ethyl-N-pentylaminocarbonyl.

The term "a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl" includes phenylalkoxycarbonyl in which alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, such as benzyloxycarbonyl, 2-phenylethoxycarbonyl, 1-phenylethoxy-carbonyl, 3-phenylpropoxycarbonyl, 4-phenylbutoxycarbonyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethoxycarbonyl, 5-phenylpentyloxy-carbonyl, 6-phenylhexyloxycarbonyl or 2-methyl-3-phenyl-propoxycarbonyl.

The term "an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 aminoalkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenylalkoxycarbonyl in which alkoxy moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, such as 2-aminoacetyl, 3-aminopropionyl, 4-aminobutyryl, 5-aminopentanoyl, 6-aminohexanoyl, 2-benzyloxycarbonylamino-acetyl, 2-(2-phenylethoxycarbonylamino)acetyl, 2-(3-phenylpropoxycarbonylamino)acetyl, 3-(4-phenylbutoxy-carbonylamino)propionyl, 4-(1,1-dimethyl-2-phenylethoxy-carbonylamino)butyryl, 5-(5-phenylpentyloxycarbonyl-amino)pentanoyl, 6-(6-phenylhexyloxycarbonylamino)hexanoyl or 2-(2-methyl-3-phenylpropoxycarbonylamino)acetyl.

The term "a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl(lower)alkyl" includes alkoxycarbonylalkyl in which alkoxy and alkyl moieties are a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy and alkyl, respectively, such as methoxycarbonylmethyl, ethoxycarbonylmethyl, 2-ethoxycarbonylethyl, 3-propoxy-carbonylpropyl, 4-butoxycarbonylbutyl, 5-pentyloxycarbonyl-pentyl, 6-hexyloxycarbonylhexyl, 2-methoxycarbonylethyl, 3-methoxycarbonylpropyl, 3-ethoxycarbonylpropyl or 4-ethoxy-carbonybutyl.

The term "a carboxy(lower)alkyl" includes carboxyalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as carboxymethyl, 2-carboxyethyl, 3-carboxypropyl, 4-carboxybutyl, 5-carboxy-pentyl, 6-carboxyhexyl, 1-carboxyethyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1988

carboxyethyl or 2-methyl-3-carboxypropyl.

The term "an anilinocarbonyl(lower)alkyl" includes anilinocarbonylalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as anilinocarbonylmethyl, 2-anilinocaronylethyl, 1-anilinocarbonylethyl, 3-anilinocarbonylpropyl, 4-anilinocarbonylbutyl, 5-anilinocarbonylpentyl, 6-anilinocarbonylhexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-anilinocarbonylethyl or 2-methyl-3-anilinocarbonylpropyl.

The term "an amino which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl or a phenyl(lower)alkyl" includes amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkanoyl, a straight chain or branched chain (C_1-C_6)alkoxycarbonyl or a phenylalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as amino, methylamino, ethylamino, propylamino, t-butylamino, pentylamino, hexylamino, dimethylamino, diethylamino, di-n-propylamino, di-n-butylamino, dipentylamino, dihexylamino, N-methyl-N-n-butylamino, N-methyl-N-pentylamino, N-ethyl-N-hexylamino, acetylamino, formylamino, propionylamino, butyrylamino, pentanoylamino, hexanoylamino, N-methyl-N-acetylamino, N-ethyl-N-propionylamino, N-methyl-N-butyrylamino, N-n-propyl-N-pentanoylamino, N-ethyl-N-hexanoylamino, methoxycrbonylamino, ethoxycarbonylamino, propoxycarbonylamino, t-butoxycarbonylamino, pentyloxycarbonylamino,

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

hexyloxycarbonylamino, butoxycarbonylamino, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-methylamino, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylamino, N-t-butoxycarbonyl-N-benzylamino, benzylamino, (2-phenylethyl)amino, (1-phenylethyl)amino, (3-phenylpropyl)amino, (4-phenylbutyl)amino, (5-phenylpentyl)amino or (6-phenylhexyl)amino.

The term "a 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms" includes 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms, such as 2(5H)-furanon-5-yl, 3,4-dibromo-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl, 3,4-dichloro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl, 3-chloro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl, 4-fluoro-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl or 3-iodo-2(5H)-furanon-5-yl.

The term "a sulfo(lower)alkyl" includes sulfoalkyl in which alkyl moiety is a straight chain or brahched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as sulfomethyl, 2-sulfoethyl, 1-sulfoethyl, 3-sulfopropyl, 4-sulfobutyl, 5-sulfopentyl, 6-sulfohexyl, 1,1-dimethyl-2-sulfoethyl or 2-methyl-3-sulfopropyl.

The term "a (lower) alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms, such as methylsulfonyl, ethylsulfonyl, isopropylsulfonyl, n-butylsulfonyl, pentylsulfonyl, hexylsulfonyl, trifluoromethylsufonyl, 2-fluoroethylsulfonyl, 3-fluoropropylsulfonyl, 4,4,4-trifluorobutylsulfonyl, 5-chloropentylsulfonyl, 6-bromohexyl-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

sulfonyl, 6-iodohexylsulfonyl, 2,2-difluoroethylsulfonyl or 2,3-dibromopropylsulfonyl.

The term "a (lower) alkoxy" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, such as methoxy, ethoxy, propoxy, isopropoxy, butoxy, tert-butoxy, pentyloxy or hexyloxy.

The term "a (lower) alkanoyloxy" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkanoyloxy, such as acetyloxy, propionyloxy, butyryloxy, isobutyryloxy, pentanoyloxy or hexanoyloxy.

The term "a (lower) alkenyl" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkenyl, such as vinyl, allyl, 2-butenyl, 3-butenyl, 1-methylallyl, 2-pentenyl or 2-hexenyl.

The term "a (lower) alkynyl" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkynyl, such as ethynyl, 2-propynyl, 2-butynyl, 3-butynyl, 1-methyl-2-propynyl, 2-pentynyl or 2-hexynyl.

The term "a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl" includes 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (5-tert-butyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (5-phenyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (5-pentyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl, (5-hexyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)-

REPLACEMENT SHEET

methyl, (5-ethyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl or (5-propyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl.

The term "a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethylamino which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl" includes 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethylamino which may be substituted by phenyl or a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl, such as (5-methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-tert-butyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-phenyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-pentyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-hexyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, (5-ethyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino, or (5-propyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methylamino.

The term "a cycloalkylamino" includes C_3-C_8 cycloalkylamino, such as cyclopropylamino, cyclobutylamino, cyclopentylamino, cyclohexylamino, cycloheptylamino or cyclooctylamino.

The term "a (lower) alkylthio" includes a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkylthio, such as methylthio, ethylthio, propylthio, isopropylthio, butylthio, tert-butylthio, penthylthio or hexylthio.

The term "a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring" includes phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring, such as phenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 3-ethoxyphenyl, 2-propoxyphenyl, 4-n-butoxyphenyl, 3-pentyloxyphenyl, 2-hexyloxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 2,4,6-trimethoxyphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 3-chlorophenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 4-bromophenyl, 2-iodophenyl, 2,4-difluorophenyl, 2,6-difluorophenyl, 3,4-difluorophenyl, 2,5-difluorophenyl, 2,4-dichlorophenyl, 2,6-dibromophenyl, 2,4,6-trifluorophenyl, 3,4,6-trichlorophenyl, 4-fluoro-2-methoxyphenyl, 2-fluoro-4-hydroxyphenyl, 2-hydroxyphenyl, 3-hydroxyphenyl, 4-hydroxyphenyl, 2,3-dihydroxyphenyl, 2,4-dihydroxyphenyl or 2,4,6-trihydroxyphenyl.

The term "a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkanoyloxy or hydroxy" includes, in addition to the above-mentioned (lower) alkyl, a straight chain or branched chain C_1-C_6 alkyl which is substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom, a straight chain or branched chain C_2-C_6 alkanoyloxy or hydroxy, such as hydroxymethyl, 2-hydroxyethyl, 1-hydroxyethyl, 3-hydroxypropyl, 4-hydroxybutyl, 5-hydroxypentyl, 6-hydroxyhexyl, 3-chloropropyl, bromomethyl, 2-fluoroethyl, 4-chlorobutyl, 3-fluoropentyl, difluoromethyl, 2,3-dichlorohexyl, 2,2,2-trifluoroethyl, trifluoromethyl, acetyloxymethyl, 2-propionyloxyethyl, 3-butyryloxypropyl, 4-pentanoyloxybutyl, 5-hexanoyloxypentyl, 6-acetyloxyhexyl, propanoyloxymethyl,

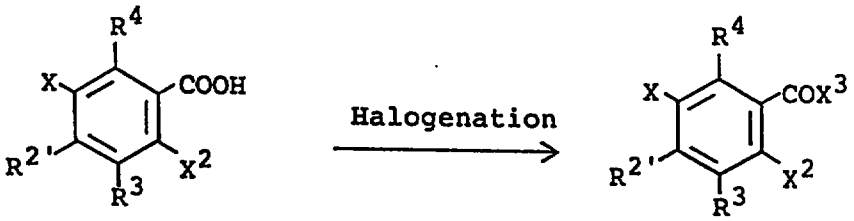
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

1-acetyloxyethyl, 2-acetyloxyethyl or 2-hexanoyloxyethyl.

The compounds of the present invention of the above general formula [1] can be prepared by various processes and preferably prepared, for example, by the processes as shown in the following reaction schemes.

RECEIVED SHEET
18 NOV 1993

[Reaction scheme-I]

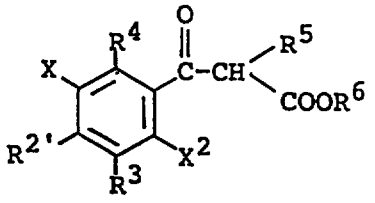


[2]

Halogenation

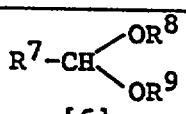
[3]

$R^5CH_2COOR^6$ [4]

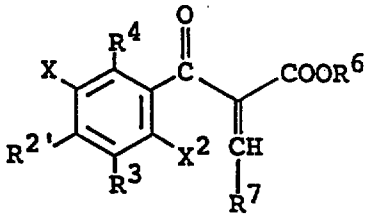


[5]

1) Removal of R^5

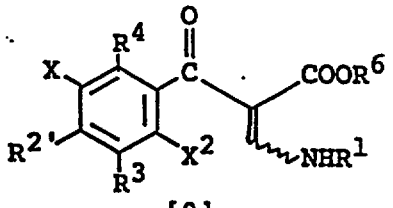
2) 

[6]



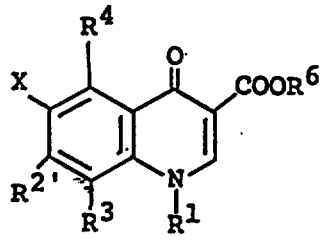
[7]

R^1-NH_2 [8]



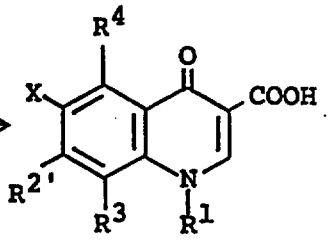
[9]

Cyclization



[1a]

Hydrolysis



[1a']

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

wherein R^1, R^2, R^3 R^4 and X are as defined above, $R^{2'}$ is a halogen atom or the R^2 group (R^2 is as defined above), R^5 is a group of the formula: $-COR^{10}$ (wherein R^{10} is a (lower) alkyl) or a group of the formula: $-COOR^{11}$ (wherein R^{11} is a (lower) alkyl), R^6 is a (lower) alkyl, R^7 is a group of the formula: $-N\begin{matrix}R^{12}\\R^{13}\end{matrix}$ (wherein R^{12} and R^{13} are each a (lower) alkyl) or a (lower) alkoxy, X^2 and X^3 are each a halogen atom, R^8 and R^9 are each a (lower) alkyl.

The halogenation of the compound [2] is carried out by reacting with a halogenating agent in the presence or absence of a solvent. The solvent includes aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, halogenated hydrocarbons such as dichloromethane, chloroform and carbon tetrachloride, ethers such as dioxane, tetrahydrofuran and diethyl ether, dimethylformamide (DMF), dimethyl sulfoxide (DMSO), and the like. The halogenating agent may be any conventional halogenating agents which can convert hydroxy in carboxy group into a halogen atom, and includes, for example, thionyl chloride, phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus oxybromide, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus pentabromide, and the like. The amounts of the compound [2] and the halogenating agent are not particularly limited, but in case of using no solvent, the halogenating agent is usually used in a large excess amount, and in case of using a solvent, the halogenating agent is usually used in an

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 2 to 4 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [2]. The reaction temperature and the reaction period of time are not particularly limited either, but the reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 100°C for about 30 minutes to about 6 hours.

The reaction between the compound [3] and the compound [4] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The solvent used in the reaction may be any conventional solvents unless they give any undesirable effect on the reaction, and includes, for example, water, ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, monoglyme and diglyme, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, aliphatic hydrocarbons such as n-hexane, heptane, cyclohexane and ligroin, amines such as pyridine and N,N-dimethylaniline, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane and carbon tetrachloride, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and hexamethylphosphoramide (HMPA), and a mixture of these solvents. The basic compound employed in the reacion includes inorganic bases such as metallic sodium, metallic potassium, metallic magnesium, sodium hydride, sodium amide, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate and sodium hydrogen carbonate, metal alcoholates such as sodium methylate and sodium ethylate,

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

and organic bases such as pyridine, piperidine, quinoline, triethylamine and N,N-dimethylaniline. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 120°C, for about 0.5 to about 20 hours. The compound [4] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [3]. The basic compound is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [3].

The compound [5] wherein R^5 is the group of the formula: $-COR^{10}$ is subjected to the reaction for removal of the group: $-COR^{10}$ in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The solvent used in the reaction includes, for example, ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, monoglyme and diglyme, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, aliphatic hydrocarbons such as n-hexane, heptane and cyclohexane, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and the like. The basic compound includes ammonia gas, aqueous ammonia, ammonium salts such as ammonium chloride, primary or secondary amines such as ethylamine, diethylamine and piperidine, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 1 to about 20 hours.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

The compound [5] wherein R^5 is a group of the formula: $-COOR^{11}$ is subjected to the reaction for removal of the group: $-COOR^{11}$ in an aqueous solution in the presence of an acid catalyst. The acid catalyst used in the reaction includes mineral acids such as hydrochloric acid and sulfuric acid, and organic acids such as p-toluenesulfonic acid. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 1 to about 20 hours.

The reaction between the obtained R^5 group-removed compound and the compound [6] is carried out in a suitable solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction may be any solvents which are used in the above reaction for the removal of the R^4 group in addition to anhydrous (lower) alkanoic acid such as acetic anhydride. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 200°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 150°C, for about 0.5 to about 10 hours. The comound [6] is usually used in an equimolar to large excess amount, preferably in an equimolar to 2 times molar amount based on the compound [5]. In case of using a compound [6] wherein R^7 is a (lower) alkoxy group, the reaction may also be carried out by using acid anhydrides such as acetic anhydride as a solvent as well as the above-mentioned solvents at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 200°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 170°C.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

The reaction between the compound [7] and the compound [8] is carried out in a suitable solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction may be any conventional solvents unless they give any undesirable effect on the reaction, and includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and propanol, ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, monoglyme and diglyme, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, aliphatic hydrocarbons such as n-hexane, heptane, cyclohexane and ligroin, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, methylene chloride and carbon tetrachloride, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 0.1 to about 15 hours. The compound [8] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [7]. In the reaction, a basic compound may optionally be added. Such basic compound may be any basic compounds which are used in the above reaction between the compound [3] and the compound [4].

The cyclization of the compound [9] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The solvent employed in the reaction may be any conventional solvents unless they give any undesirable effect on the reaction, and includes, for example, ethers such as diethyl

REPLACEMENT SHEET

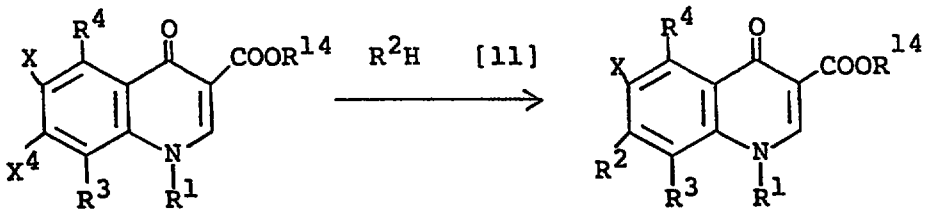
ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran, monoglyme and diglyme, aliphatic hydrocarbons such as n-hexane, heptane and ligroin, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, methylene chloride and carbon tetrachloride, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and the like. The basic compound employed in the reaction includes inorganic bases such as metallic sodium, metallic potassium, sodium hydride, sodium amide, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate, metal alcoholates such as sodium methylate and sodium ethylate, organic bases such as 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undecene-7 (DBU), N-benzyltrimethylammonium hydroxide and tetrabutylammonium hydroxide, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C, for about 0.5 to about 15 hours. The basic compound is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [9].

The hydrolysis of the compound [1a] can be carried out under the conditions of conventional hydrolysis, for instance, in the presence of a basic compound such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, barium hydroxide or potassium carbonate, a mineral acid such as sulfuric acid, hydrochloric acid or nitric acid, or an organic acid such as acetic acid or aromatic sulfonic acids, in a solvent including water, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, ketones such as acetone and methyl ethyl ketone,

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

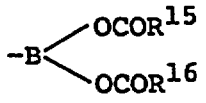
ethers such as dioxane and ethylene glycol diethyl ether, acetic acid, or a mixture thereof. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C, for about 0.1 to about 30 hours. By the reaction, there is produced the compound [1a'].

[Reaction Scheme-II]



[1b] [1b']

wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined above, X^4 is a halogen atom, and R^{14} is hydrogen atom or a group of the formula:



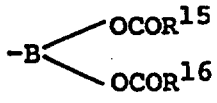
(wherein R^{15} and R^{16} are each an alkyl).

For conducting the reaction between the compound [1b] and the comound [11], both compounds are used in a wide range of ratio, and the compound [11] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably about 1 to about 5 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [1b]. The reaction is carried out in an innert solvent, which includes, for example, water, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, isopropanol, butanol, amyl alcohol and isoamyl alcohol,

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, ethers such as tetrahydrofuran, dioxane and diglyme, dimethylacetamide, DMF, DMSO, HMPA, N-methylpyrrolidone, and the like and a mixture thereof. Among these solvents, the preferred one is DMF, DMSO, HMPA, and N-methylpyrrolidone. The reaction may also be carried out in the presence of an acid-removing agent, including inorganic carbonates such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate and potassium hydrogen carbonate and organic bases such as pyridine, quinoline and triethylamine. An alkaline methal halide such as potassium fluoride may also be added to the reaction mixture. The reaction is usually carried out under a pressure of from 1 to 20 atm., preferably from 1 to 10 atm., at a temperature of from room temperature to around 250°C, preferably from room temperature to around 200°C, for about 10 minutes to about 30 hours.

The compound [1b'] wherein R^{14} is a group of the formula:

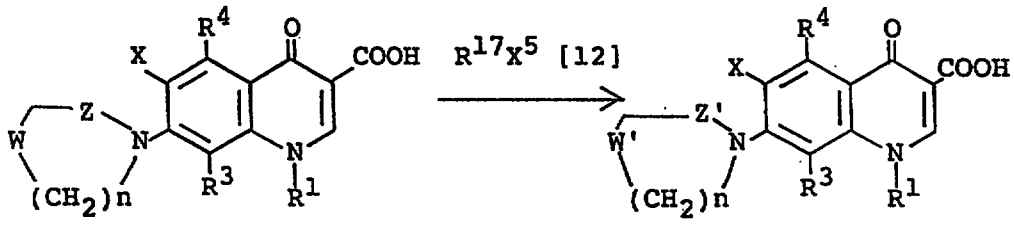


can be converted into the corresponding compound [1b'] wherein R^{14} is hydrogen atom by treating the former compound with an acid or a base to decompose the chelate compound. The acid employed in the reaction includes mineral acids such as hydrochloric acid and sulfuric acid, and organic acids such as acetic acid and p-toluenesulfonic acid. The

REPLACEMENT SHEET
16 NOV 1990

base employed in the reaction includes mineral bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate and potassium carbonate, and organic bases such as triethylamine. The reaction favorably proceeds at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 100°C. The acid or the base may be used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 10 moles, per 1 mole of the starting compound.

[Reaction scheme-III]



[1c] [1d]

wherein X, R^1, R^3 and R^4 are as defined above, either Z or W is $-CH_2-$ and the other is -NH, n is an integer of 1 to 3, R^{17} is a (lower) alkyl; a cycloalkyl; a phenyl(lower)alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a (lower) alkoxy, nitro or amino; a phenyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom or a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a pyridyl; a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, an amino which may be substituted by 1 or 2 substituents of a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

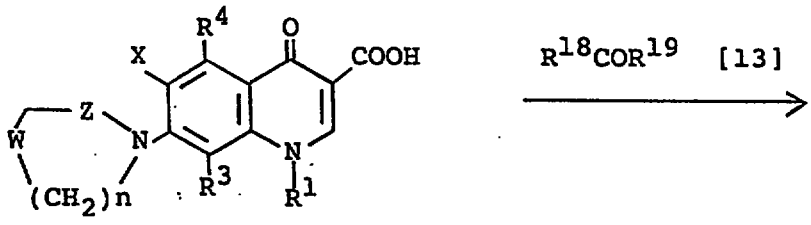
cycloalkyl or a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl, a (lower) alkoxy and a halogen atom; a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms; a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl(lower)alkyl; a carboxy(lower)alkyl; an anilinocarbonyl(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a sulfo(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkenyl or a (lower) alkynyl, X^5 is a halogen atom, and either Z' or W' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is $-NR^{17}$.

The reaction between the compound [1c] and the compound [12] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a hydrogen halide-removing agent. The solvent includes water, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, ketones such as acetone and methyl ethyl ketone, ethers such as diethyl ether and dioxane, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, and the like. The hydrogen halide-removing agent includes inorganic bases such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium carbonate and potassium carbonate, alkaline metals such as sodium and potassium, and organic bases such as pyridine and piperidine. If necessary, copper powders, copper halides

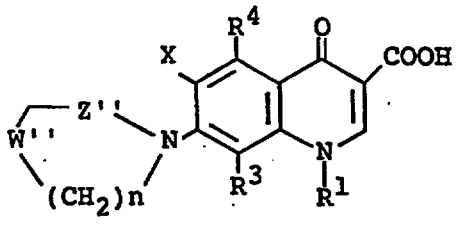
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

such as copper iodide or alkaline metal halides such as sodium iodide and potassium iodide may also be employed. The compound [12] is usually used in an equimolar to large excess amount, preferably 1 to 3 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [1c]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 150°C, preferably from around 50°C to around 120°C, for about 1 to about 12 hours.

[Reaction scheme - IV]



[1c]



[1e]

wherein R^1, R^3, R^4, Z, W, n and X are as defined above, R^{18} and R^{19} are each hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, and either Z'' or W'' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is $-N-CH\begin{matrix}R^{18}\\R^{19}\end{matrix}$.

The reaction between the compound [1c] and the compound [13] is carried out in the presence or absence of a solvent in the presence of a reducing agent. The solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, water,

REPLACEMENT

alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, lower alkanoic acids such as formic acid and acetic acid, ethers such as dioxane, diethyl ether, diglyme and tetrahydrofuran, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzen, xylene and toluene, and the like. The reducing agent includes formic acid, alkaline metal or alkaline earth metal salts of formic acid such as sodium formate, reducing agents for hydrogenation such as sodium borohydride, sodium cyanoborohydride and lithium aluminum hydride, catalysts for catalytic reduction such as palladium black, palladium carbon, platinum oxide, platinum black and Raney nickel, and the like. In case of using formic acid as the reducing agent, the reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from around 50°C to around 150°C, for about 1 to about 10 hours. Formic acid is preferably used in a large excess amount to the compound [1c]. Besides, in case of using a reducing agent for hydrogenation, the reaction is usually carried out at a temprature of from around -30°C to around 100°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 70°C, for about 30 minutes to about 12 hours. The reducing agent is usually used in an amount of from 1 to 20 moles, preferably from 1 to 6 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [1c]. In case of using lithium aluminum hydride as the reducing agent, a preferable solvent includes ethers such as diethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran and diglyme, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, and the like. In case of using a

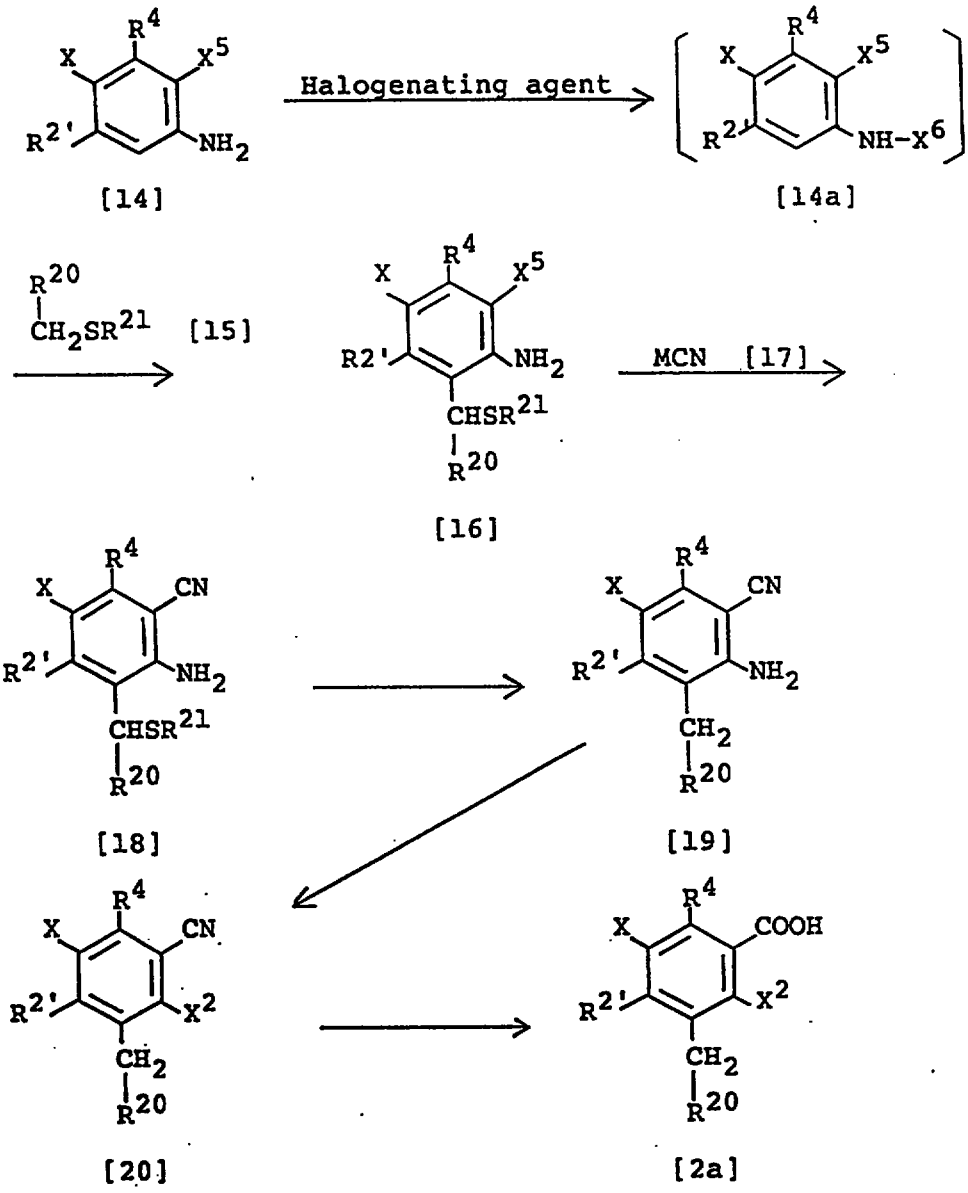
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

catalyst for catalytic reduction, the reaction is usually carried out under a hydrogen pressure of from ordinary pressure to 20 atm., preferably from ordinary pressure to 10 atm., at a temperature of from -30°C to 100°C, preferably from 0°C to 60°C, for 1 to 12 hours. The catalyst is usually used in an amount of from 0.1 to 40% by weight, preferably from 0.1 to 20% by weight, of the compound [1c]. The compound [13] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 mole to a large excess amount, per 1 mole of the compound [1c].

In the reaction scheme-I, the starting compounds of the formula [2] are novel or known compounds, which can be prepared, for example, by the process as shown in the following reaction scheme-V.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

[Reaction scheme-V]



wherein X, $R^{2'}$, R^4 and X^2 are as defined above, X^5 and X^6 are each a halogen atom, R^{20} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl and R^{21} is a (lower) alkyl, in which R^{20} and R^{21} may

REPLACEMENT SHEET

be taken together to form a 5- to 7-membered ring, and M is an alkaline metal such as sodium or potassium, or a metal such as silver, calcium or copper.

In case that R^{20} and R^{21} of the compound [16] are taken together to form a 5- to 7-membered ring, R^{20} of the compound [20] is $-R^{20}-R^{21}-H$.

The compound [16] can be prepared by reacting the starting aniline derivative of the formula [14] with a halogenating agent and then reacting the resultant compound of the formula [14a] with the thio compound of the formula [15].

The reaction between the aniline derivative [14] and the halogenating agent is usually carried out in a suitable solvent. The solvent may be any conventional solvents unless they give any undesirable effect on the reaction. Such solvent includes, for example, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform and dichloromethane, ethers such as dioxane, diethyl ether and tetrahydrofuran, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, lower alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, polar solvents such as DMSO, HMPA and acetonitrile, and the like. The halogenating agent employed in the above reaction may be any conventional halogenating agents and includes, for example, N-bromosuccinimide, N-chlorosuccinimide, sodium hypobromite, sodium hypochlorite, bleaching powder, thionyl chloride, tert-butyl hypochloride, and the like. The

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

halogenating agent is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 6 moles, per 1 mole of the starting compound. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -78°C to room temperature, preferably from around -60°C to around 15°C, and usually completes in a moment or within a few minutes.

By the reaction, there is produced the intermediate of the formula [14a]. While the resultant compound [14a] may be separated from the reaction mixture to provide it for a subsequent reaction, the reaction mixture is usually subjected to the reaction with the thio compound of the formula [15] without separating it from the reaction mixture.

The reaction between the intermediate compound [14a] and the compound [15] is carried out in the same solvent and at the same temperature as mentioned above in the presence of a suitable basic compound. The preferable basic compound which can be employed in the reaction includes inorganic bases such as potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, sodium hydroxide, sodium hydrogen carbonate, sodium amide and sodium hydride, and organic bases including tertiary amines such as triethylamine, tripropylamine, pyridine and quinoline. The compound [15] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the intermediate compound [14a]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

temperature to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 1 to about 50 hours.

The reaction between the compound [16] and the compound [17] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence or absence of a basic compound. The solvent employed in the reaction includes water, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, ethers such as dioxane, tetrahydrofuran and diglyme, polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO, HMPA and N-methylpyrrolidone, or a mixture thereof. The basic compound includes, for example, inorganic carbonates such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate and potassium hydrogen carbonate, organic bases such as pyridine, quinoline and triethylamine, phase transfer catalysts such as phenyltriethylammonium chloride and tetramethylammonium chloride, and the like. The compound [17] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [16]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 180°C, for about 0.5 to about 10 hours.

The desulfurization of the compound [18] for preparing the compound [19] is usually carried out in a solvent in the presence of a suitable catalyst. The catalyst includes, for example, aluminum-amalgam, lithium-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV

(lower) alkylamine, Raney nickel, Raney cobalt, triethyl phosphite, triphenyl phosphine, and the like, and preferably Raney nickel. The solvent includes alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, ethers such as diehtyl ether, dioxane and tetrahydrofuran, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours. The catalyst is usually used in an amount of from 1 to 10-fold by weight of the compound [18].

The reaction of converting the compound [19] into the compound [20] is carried out by reacting the compound [19] with a metallic salt of nitrous acid such as sodium nitrite or potassium nitrite in a suitable solvent in the presence of an acid, and then reacting the resultant product, without separation from the reaction mixture, with a metal halide such as potassium iodide, copper (I) chloride or copper (I) bromide. The acid employed in the reaction includes mineral acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid and hydrobromic acid. The solvent includes water, alkanoic acids such as acetic acid, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzen, toluene and xylene, alcohols such as methanol, ehtanol and isopropanol, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane and dichloroethane, ethers such as dioxane and tetrahydrofuran, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and a mixture

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

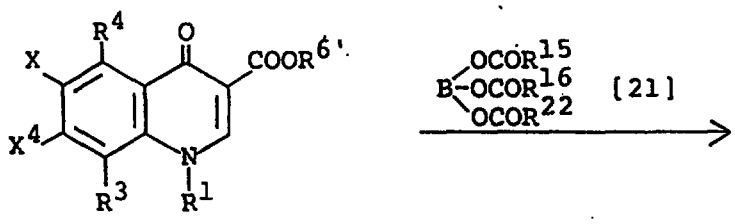
thereof. The metallic salt of nitrous acid and the metal halide each is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [19]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 100°C, for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours.

The hydrolysis of the compound [20] can be carried out in the presence of a suitable hydrolysis catalyst, including a mineral alkaline compound, e.g., a hydrohalogenic acid such as hydrochloric acid or hydrobromic acid, a mineral acid such as sulfuric acid or phosphoric acid, an alkaline metal hydroxide such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, an alkaline metal carbonate or hydrogencarbonate such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate or sodium hydrogen carbonate, in the presence or absence of a suitable solvent, such as, for example, water or a mixture of water and a lower alcohol such as methanol or ehtanol. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from 50°C to 200°C, preferably from 70°C to 180°C, for about 1 to about 10 hours.

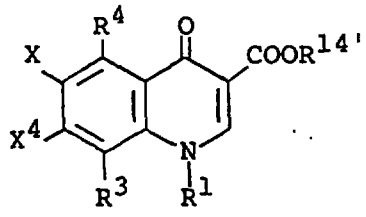
In the reaction scheme-II, the compounds of the formula [1b] wherein R^{14} is a group: $-B\begin{<}OCOR^{15}\\OCOR^{16}\end{>}$ can be prepared, for example, by the process as shown in the following reaction scheme-VI.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

[Reaction scheme-VI]



[1f]



[1g]

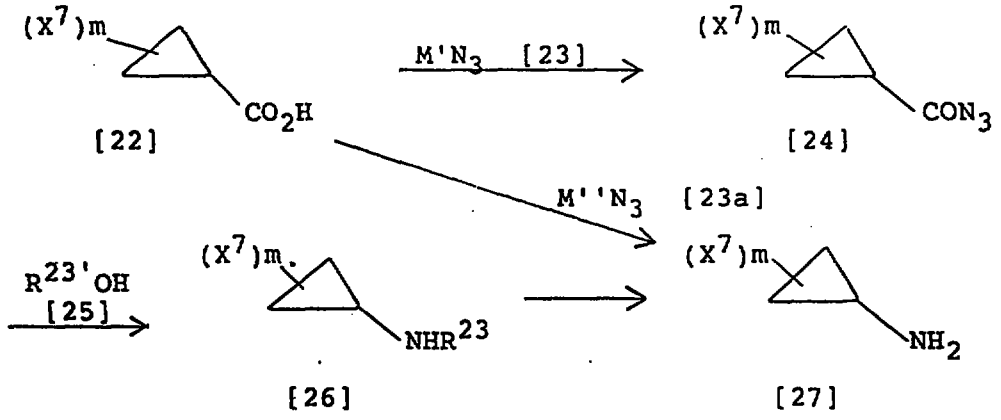
wherein R^1, R^3, R^4, X, X^4, R^{15} and R^{16} are as defined above, $R^{6'}$ is a (lower) alkyl or hydrogen atom, $R^{14'}$ is a group: $-B(OCOR^{15})(OCOR^{16})$, and R^{22} is a (lower) alkyl.

The reaction between the compound [1f] and the compound [21] is carried out in a suitable solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, the solvents employed in the reaction between the R^5 group-removed compound and the compound [6] in the above reaction scheme-I. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C, for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours. The compound [21] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 10 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [1f].

REPLACEMENT SHEET

The compounds [8] employed in the reaction scheme-I are novel or known compounds, which can be prepared, for example, by the process as shown in the following reaction scheme-VII.

[Reaction scheme-VII]



wherein X^7 is a halogen atom, R^{23} is a phenyl(lower)-alkoxycarbonyl, $R^{23'}$ is a phenyl(lower)alkyl, m is an integer of 1 to 3, M' is an alkaline metal such as sodium or potassium, and M'' is hydrogen atom or M'.

The reaction between the compound [22] and the compound [23] can be carried out under reaction conditions usually employed in a reaction for forming an amide bond. For forming an amide bond, known reaction conditions for the amide bond formation can be employed, for example, (a) a mixed acid anhydride process: a process which comprises reacting the carboxylic acid [22] with an alkyl halo-carboxylate to give a mixed acid anhydride, which is then reacted with the azide [23]; (b) an active ester process: a

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

process which comprises converting the carboxylic acid [22] into an active ester such as p-nitrophenyl ester, N-hydroxysuccinimide ester or 1-hydroxybenzotriazole ester, and then reacting the resultant ester with the azide [23]; (c) a carbodiimide process: a process which comprises condensing the carboxylic acid [22] with the azide [23] in the presence of an activating agent such as dicyclohexyl-carbodiimide or carbonyldiimidazole; and (d) other processes: a process which comprises converting the carboxylic acid [22] into the carboxylic anhydride using a dehydration agent such as acetic anhydride, and then reacting the resultant anhydride with the azide [23], a process which comprises reacting an ester from the carboxylic acid [22] and a lower alcohol with the azide [23] under a high pressure at a high temperature, or a process which comprises reacting an acid halide of the carboxylic acid [22], i.e. acyl halide with the azide [23].

The mixed acid anhydride used in the above mixed acid anhydride process can be obtained by a conventional Schotten-Baumann reaction, and the resultant anhydride is reacted with the azide [23], usully without separating it from the reaction mixture, to prepare the compound [24]. The Schotten-Baumann reaction is carried out in the presence of a basic compound. The basic compound which can be employed in the reaction includes those usually employed in the Schotten-Baumann reaction, for example, organic bases

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

such as triethylamine, trimethylamine, pyridine, dimethylaniline, N-methylmorpholine, 1,5-diazabicyclo [4,3,0] nonene-5 (DBN), 1,8-diazabicyclo [5,4,0] undecene-7 (DBU) and 1,4-diazabicyclo [2,2,2] octane (DABCO), and inorganic bases such as potassium carbonate, sodium carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate and sodium hydrogen carbonate.- The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -20°C to around 100°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 50°C, for 5 minutes to 10 hours, preferably 5 minutes to 2 hours. The reaction between the obtained mixed acid anhydride and the azide [23] is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -20°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 50°C, for 5 minutes to 10 hours, preferably for 5 minutes to 5 hours. The mixed acid anhydride process is usually carried out in a solvent. The solvent may be any which is usually employed in the mixed acid anhydride process, including water, halogenated hydrocarbons such as methylene chloride, chloroform and dichloroethane, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, ethers such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran and dimethoxyethane, esters such as methyl acetate and ethyl acetate, ketones such as acetone, aprotic polar solvents such as DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and a mixture thereof. The alkyl halocarboxylate used in the mixed acid anhydride process includes, for example, methyl chloroformate, methyl bromoformate, ethyl chloroformate, ethyl

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

bromoformate, isobutyl chloroformate, and the like. The azide [23] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the carboxylic acid [22].

In case of using the process of reacting an acyl halide with the azide [23], the reaction is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The basic compound used in the reaction may be any known basic compounds, including, for example, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, sodium hydride, potassium hydride, silver carbonate, and metal alcoholates such as sodium methylate and sodium ethylate, in addition to the basic compound employed in the above Schotten-Baumann reaction. The solvent used in the reaction includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol, propanol, butanol, 3-methoxy-1-butanol, ethyl cellosolve and methyl cellosolve, pyridine, acetone, acetonitrile, the solvents employed in the above mixed acid anhydride process, and a mixture thereof. Although the ratio of the azide [23] and an acyl halide employed is not particularly limited, the acyl halide is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 5 moles, per 1 mole of the azide [23]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -30° to around 180°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 150°C, for about 5 minutes to about 30 hours. The compound [24] thus prepared may be used in a subsequent reaction without separating it from the reaction mixture.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

The reaction between the compound [24] and the compound [25] is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C, for 1 to 15 hours, in a suitable solvent or in the absence a solvent. The compound [25] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [24].

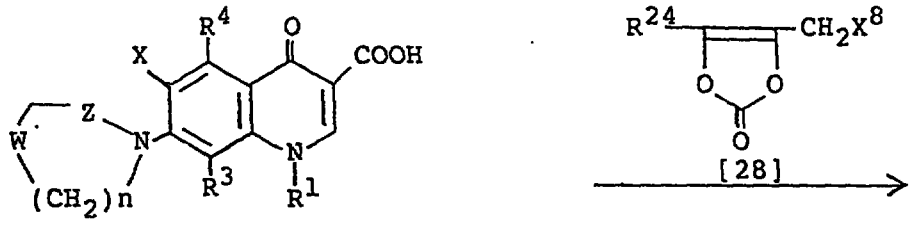
The reaction of converting the compound [26] into the compound [27] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as used in the reaction for removing a phenyl (lower) alkyl or a phenyl (lower) alkoxycarbonyl on the heterocyclic ring attached to the above compound [1].

The reaction of directly converting the compound [22] into the compound [27] is generally referred to as Schmidt reaction, and carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of an acid. The acid employed in the reaction includes mineral acids such as sulfuric acid and hydrochloric acid, phosphorus compounds such as phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus trichloride and phosphorus pentoxide, thionyl chloride, iron [III] chloride, aluminum chloride, stannic chloride, sulfoacetic acid, phosphoric acid, and the like. The solvent includes aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, halogenated hydrocarbons such as chloroform, dichloromethane and carbon tetrachloride, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a

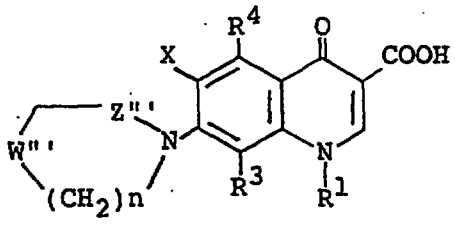
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 100°C, for about 0.5 to about 10 hours. The compound [23a] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 2 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [22].

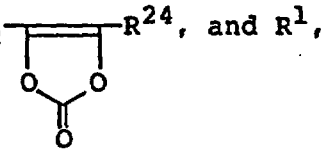
[Reaction scheme-VIII]



[1c]



[1h]

wherein R^{24} is phenyl, a lower alkyl or hydrogen atom, X^8 is a halogen atom, either Z"' or W"' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is a group: , and R^1, R^3, R^4, Z, W, X and n are as defined above.

The reaction between the compound [1c] and the compound [28] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [1b] and the compound [11] in the above reaction scheme-II.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

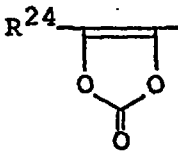
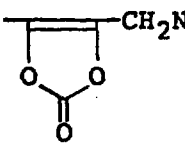
Among the compounds [1], the compound in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by (a) a phenyl(lower)alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a (lower) alkoxy, nitro or amino; (b) a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms, a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy; (c) a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; (d) an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; (e) a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; (f) an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; (g) phthalide; (h) a 2(5H)-furanone which may be substituted by 1 or 2 of halogen atoms; or (i) a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl which may be substituted by phenyl or a (lower) alkyl can be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is not substituted, for example, using the following methods.

The compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by (a) or (e) can be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is not substituted, by treating the former compound in a suitable solvent such as, for example, water, a (lower) alcohol such as methanol, ethanol or isopropanol, an ether such as dioxane or tetrahydrofuran, acetic acid, or a mixture thereof, in the presence of a catalyst for catalytic reduction such as palladium carbon or palladium black, under a hydrogen pressure of from 1 to 10 atom., at a temperature of from

REPLACEMENT SHEET

around 0°C to around 100°C, for about 0.5 to about 10 hours, wherein a mineral acid such as hydrochloric acid may be added to the reaction mixture, or by heating the former compound in an aqueous hydrobromic acid solution, to remove the phenyl(lower)alkyl such as benzyl or the phenyl(lower)-alkoxycarbonyl.

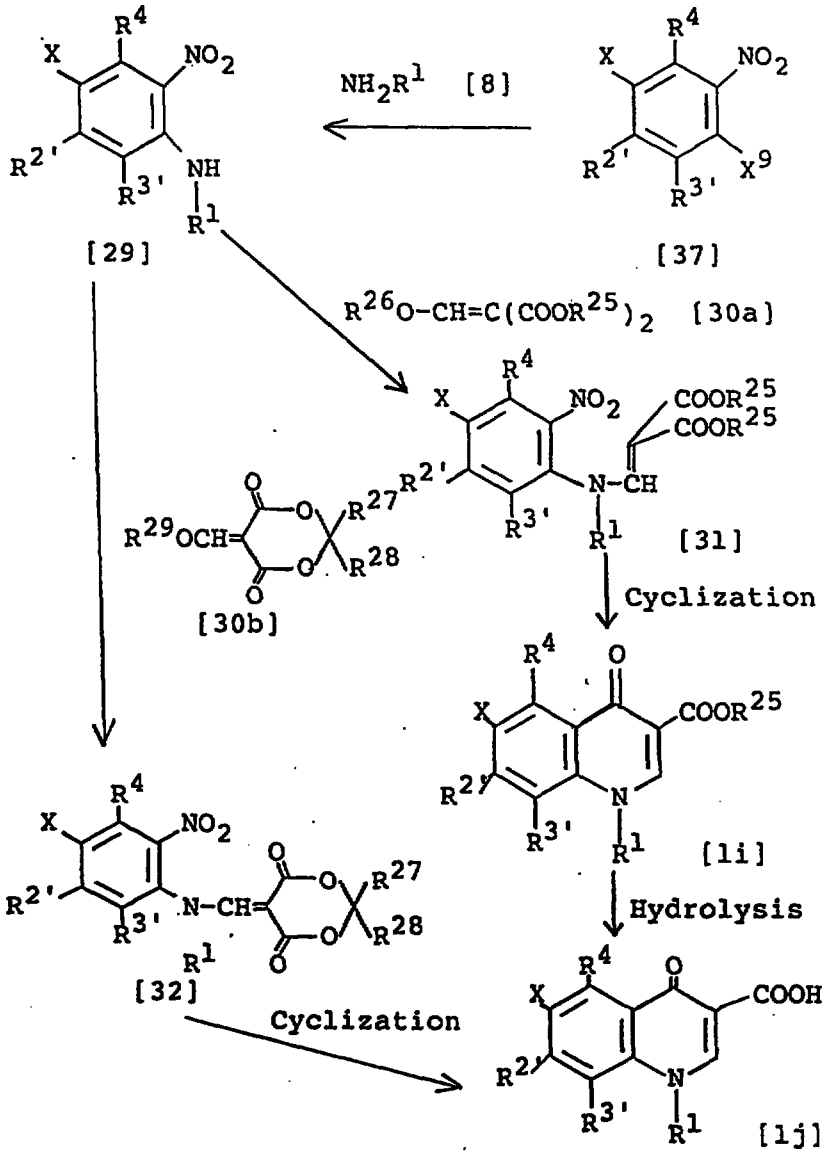
The compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by any of the substituents (b) to (i) can be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is not substituted, by hydrolyzing the former compound under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [1a].

The compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by amino can be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by a group:  by using the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [1c] and the compound [28] in the above reaction scheme-VIII. The compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by a group:  can also be converted into the compound [1] in which the heterocyclic ring is substituted by amino, by hydrolyzing the former compound under the same

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [1a].

[Reaction scheme-IX]



wherein R^1, $R^{2'}$, R^3, R^4, X^9 and X are as defined above, $R^{3'}$ is a group:

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1976

$-\overset{R^{20}}{\underset{|}{C}}HSR^{21}$ wherein R^{20} and R^{21} are as defined above or R^3, and R^{25}, R^{26}, R^{27}, R^{28} and R^{29} are each a (lower) alkyl.

The reaction between the compound [37] and the compound [8] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [1b] and the compound [11] in the above reaction scheme-II.

The reaction between the compound [29] and the compound [30a] or [30b] is carried out in the presence or absence of a solvent, preferably in the absence of a solvent. The solvent used in the reaction includes, for example, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and isopropanol, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene and toluene, polar solvents such as acetonitrile, DMF, DMSO and HMPA, and the like. The compound [30a] or [30b] is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [29]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from around 60°C to around 200°C, for about 0.5 to about 25 hours.

The cyclization of the compound [31] or [32] can be carried out according to various known methods for the cyclization, including a heating method, a method using an acidic compound such as phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride, phosphorus trichloride, thionyl chloride, conc. sulfuric acid or polyphosphoric acid, and the like.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

In case of using the heating method, the reaction is usually carried out in a high b.p. solvent such as a high b.p. hydrocarbon or a high b.p. ether such as tetralin, diphenyl ether or diethylene glycol dimethyl ether at a temperature of from 100°C to 250°C, preferably from 150°C to 200°C. In case of using the method with an acidic compound, the acidic compound is usually used in an equimolar to a large excess amount, preferably 10 to 20 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [31] or [32]. The reaction is usually carried out in the presence or absence of a suitable solvent at a temperature of from room temperature to 150°C for about 0.1 to about 6 hours. The solvent includes acid anhydrides such as acetic anhydride in addition to the solvents employed in the cyclization of the above compound [9].

The hydrolysis of the compound [1i] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the compound [1a] in the above reaction scheme-I.

The compound [1j] in which $R^{3'}$ is a group: $-\overset{R^{20}}{\underset{|}{C}}HSR^{21}$ can be coverted into the corresponding compound in which $R^{3'}$ is $-CH_2R^{20}$ by treating the former compound under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaciton wherein the compound [18] is converted into the compound [19] in the above reaction scheme-V.

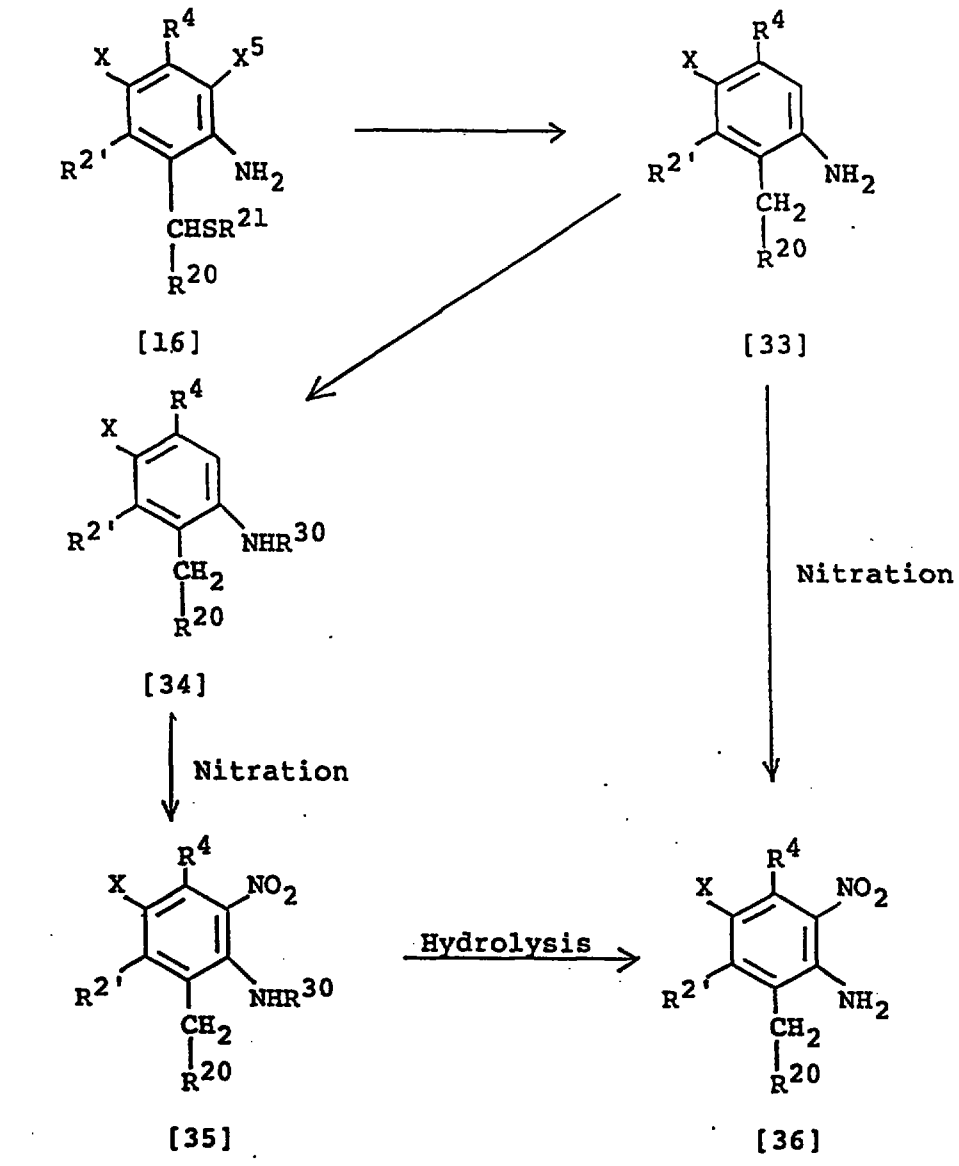
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

The compound [1j] in which $R^{2'}$ is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring having a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl on the secondary nitrogen atom can be converted into the corresponding compound in which $R^{2'}$ is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring having no substituent on the secondary nitrogen atom by treating the former compound under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the compound [1a] in the above reaction scheme-I.

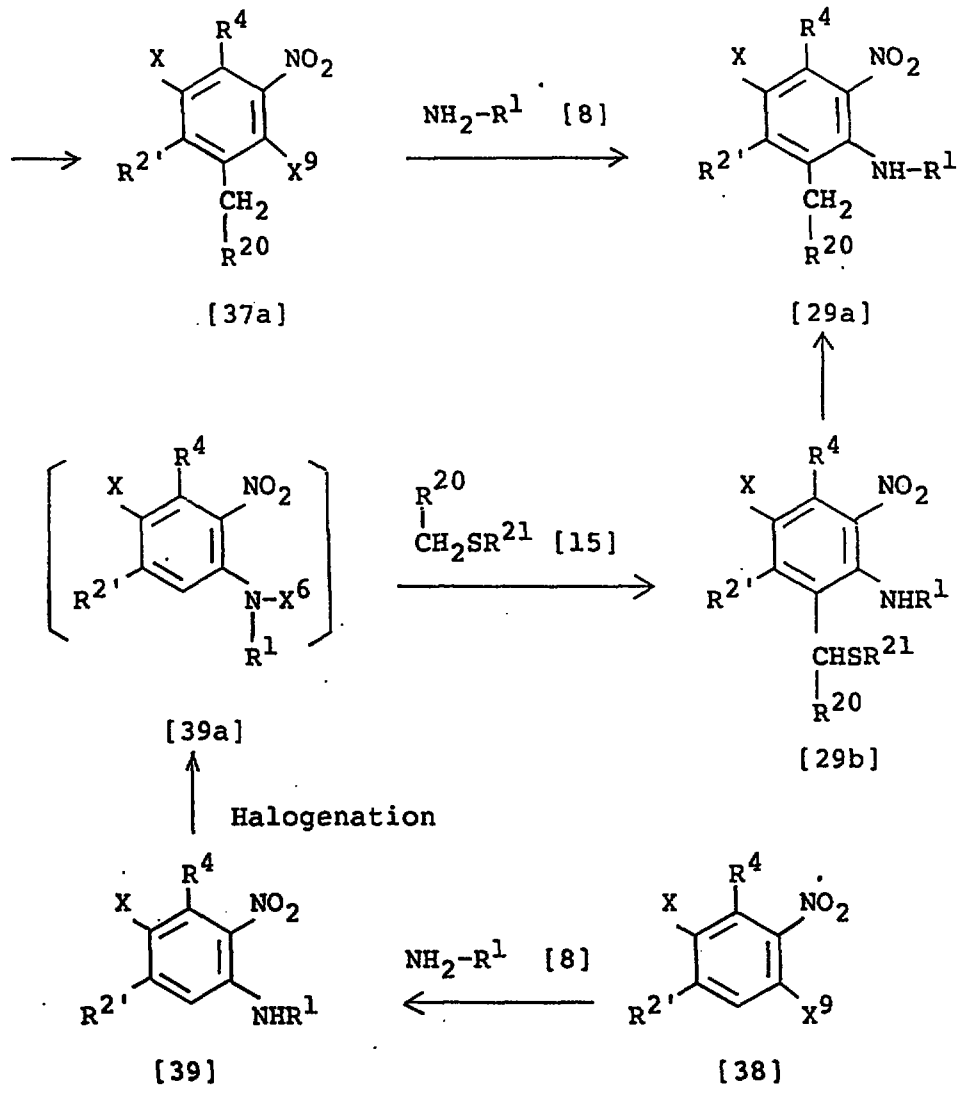
The compound [29] employed as the starting material in the above reaciton scheme-IX can be prepared, for example, by the processes as shown in the following reaction schemes-X to XIII.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

[Reaction scheme-X]



REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996



wherein R^1, $R^{2'}$, R^{20}, R^{21}, X, X^5 and X^6 are as defined above, R^{30} is a (lower) alkanoyl, and X^9 is a halogen atom.

The desulfurization of the compound [16] or [29b] can be carried out under the same reaciton conditions as employed in the desulfurization of the above compound [18].

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

The reaction of converting the compound [33] into the compound [34] is carried out in the presence of a (lower) alkanoylating agent, which includes a (lower) alkanoic acid such as formic acid, acetic acid or propionic acid, a (lower) alkanoic acid anhydride such as acetic anhydride, a (lower) alkanoic acid halide such as acetyl chloride or propionyl bromide, or the like. In case of using an acid anhydride or an acid halide as the (lower) alkanoylating agent, a basic compound may also be employed. The basic compound includes, for example, alkali metals such as metallic sodium and metallic potassium; hydroxides, carbonates or hydrogen carbonates of these alkali metals; organic bases such as pyridine and piperidine, and the like. The reaction can be carried out in either the presence or the absence of a solvent, usually in the presence of a suitable solvent. The solvent includes, for example, ketones such as acetone and methyl ethyl ketone, ethers such as diethyl ether and dioxane, aromatic hydrocarbons such as benzene, toluene and xylene, acetic acid, acetic anhydride, water, pyridine, and the like. The (lower) alkanoylating agent is used in an amount of at least 1 mole per 1 mole of the compound [33], usually in an equimolar to a large excess amount. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 100°C, for about 5 minutes to about 15 hours. In case of using a

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

(lower) alkanoic acid as the (lower) alkanoylating agent, a dehydrating agent is preferably employed, which includes mineral acids such as sulfuric acid and hydrochloric acid, sulfonic acids such as p-toluenesulfonic acid, benzenesulfonic acid and ethanesulfonic acid and the like, and the reaction is preferably carried out at a temperature of from around 50°C to around 120°C.

The nitration of the compound [33] or [34] is carried out by treating the said compound with a nitrating agent such as fuming nitric acid, concd. nitric acid, a mixed acid (e.g. nitric acid plus sulfuric acid, fuming sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid or acetic anhydride, etc.), an alkali metal nitrate plus sulfuric acid, an anhydride of nitric acid and an organic acid such as acetyl nitrate or benzoyl nitrate, nitrogen tetraoxide, nitric acid plus mercury nitrate, nitrate of acetone cyanohydrin, an alkyl nitrate plus sulfuric acid or a polyphosphoric acid, without a solvent or in the presenece of a solvent such as acetic acid, acetic anhydride or sulfuric acid. The nitrating agent is preferably used in an amount of 1 to 5 moles per 1 mole of the compound [33] or [34]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -10°C to around 70°C for about 10 minutes to about 24 hours.

The hydrolysis of the compound [35] is carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [1a].

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

The reaction between the compound [37a] or [38] and the compound [8] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [1b] and the compound [11] in the above reaction scheme-II.

The halogenation of the compound [39] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the halogenation of the above compound [14].

The reaction of converting the compound [29b] into the compound [29a] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reaction of converting the compound [18] into the compound [19].

The reaction between the compound [39a] and the compound [15] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [14a] and the compound [15].

The reaction of converting the compound [36] into the compound [37] can be carried out by converting the former compound into a diazonium salt thereof using sodium nitrite and an acid such as sulfuric acid, hydrochloric acid hydrobromic acid or boron fluoride in a solvent such as a (lower) alkanoic acid such as acetic acid or water, and then reacting the diazonium salt with a copper powder or a copper halide such as, for example, cuprous bromide, cuprous chloride or cupric chloride in the presence of a hydrohalogenic acid such as, for example, hydrobromic acid or

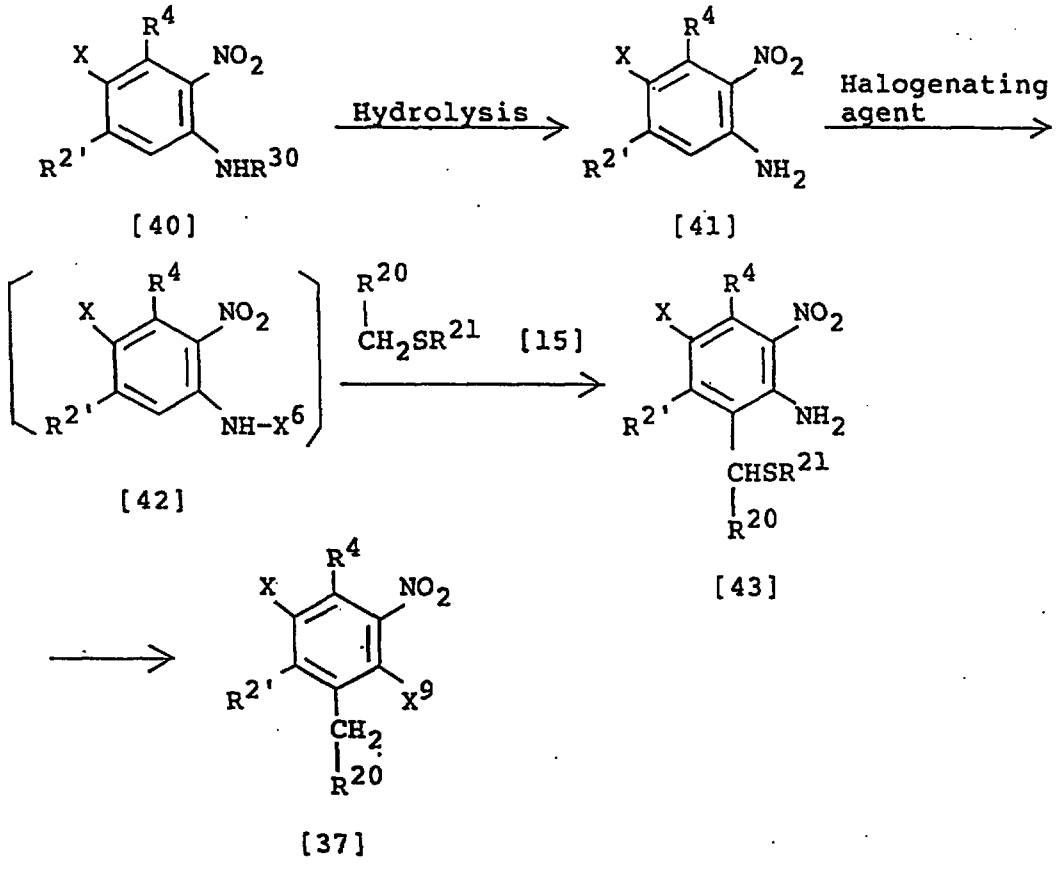
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

hydrochloric acid, or reacting with potassium iodide in the presence or absence of a copper powder, preferably with a copper halide in the presence of a hydrohalogenic acid. The sodium nitrite is usually used in an amount of 1 to 2 moles, preferably 1 to 1.5 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [36], and the copper halide is usually used in an amount of 1 to 5 moles, preferably 1 to 4 moles, per 1 mole of the compound [36]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -20°C to around 100°C, preferably from around -5°C to around 100°C, for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours.

The halogen atoms of $R^{2'}$ and X^9 in the compound [37a], the compound [1a], the compound [1a'] and the compound [45] described below can be converted into each other.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

[Reaction scheme-XI]



[40] [41] [42] [43] [37]

wherein $R^{2'}$, R^{20}, R^{21}, R^{30}, X, X^6 and X^9 are as defined above.

The hydrolysis of the compound [40] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [1a].

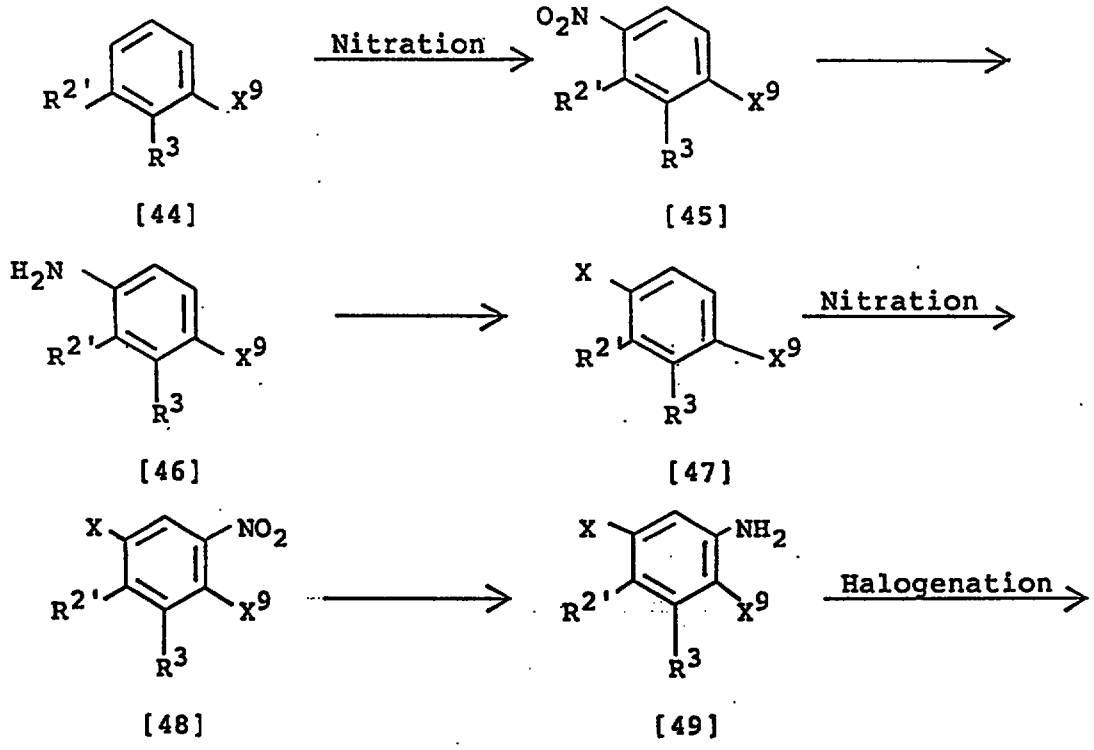
The halogenation of the compound [41] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the halogenation of the compound [14] in the above reaction scheme-V.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

The reaction between the compound [42] and the compound [15] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the compound [14a] and the compound [15].

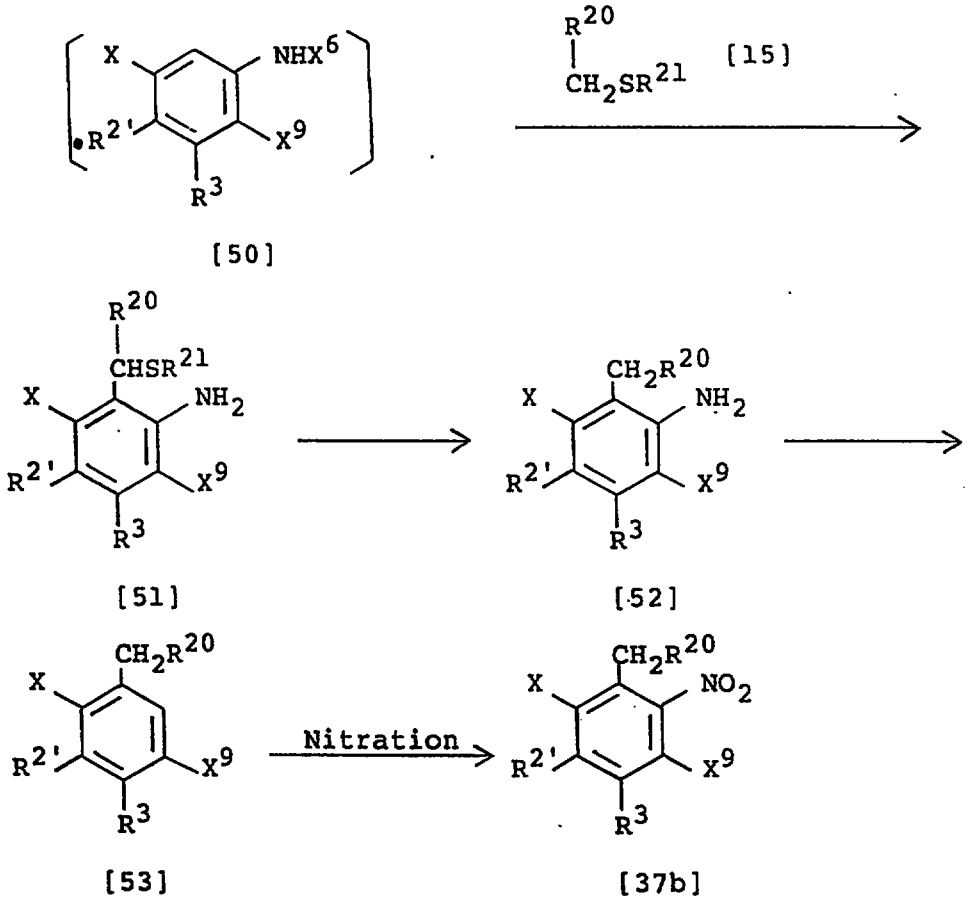
The desulfurization of the compound [43] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the desulfurization of the compound [18] in the above reaction scheme-V.

[Reaction scheme-XII]



[44] [45] [46] [47] [48] [49]

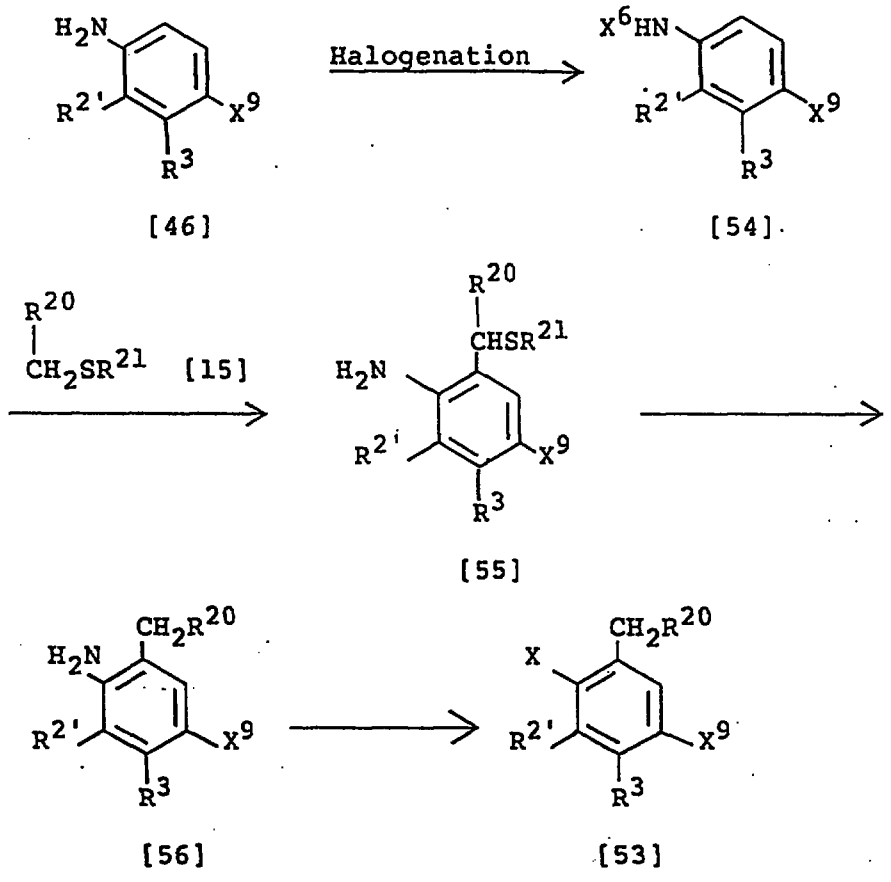
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996



wherein $R^{2'}$, R^3, X^6, X^9, R^{20} and R^{21} are as defined above.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

[Reaction scheme-XIII]



[46] [54] [55] [56] [53]

wherein $R^{2'}$, R^3, X^6, X^9, R^{20} and R^{21} are as defined above.

The nitration of each compound [44], [47] or [53] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the nitration of the compound [33] or [34].

The reduction of the compound [45] or [48] is usually carried out by (i) reducing the compound with a catalyst for catalytic reduction in a suitable solvent, or by (ii) reducing the compound with a reducing agent such as a mixture of metal or metal salt with an acid or a mixture

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

of metal or metal salt with hydroxide, sulfide or ammonium salt of alkali metal in a suitable innert solvent. In case of the process (i) of the catalytic reduction, the solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, water, acetic acid, alcohols such as methanol, ethanol and iso-propanol, hydrocarbons such as hexane and cyclohexane, ethers such as diethylene glycol dimethyl ether, dioxane, tetrahydrofuran and diethyl ether, esters such as ethyl acetate and methyl acetate, aprotic polar solvent such as N,N-dimethyl formamide, and the like. The catalyst for catalytic reduction employed in the reaction includes, for example, palladium, palladium black, palladium carbon, platinum, platinum oxide, copper chromite, Raney nickel, and the like. The catalyst is usually used in an amount of from 0.02 to 1.00 times weight based on the compound [45] or [48]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -20°C to around 150°C, preferably from around 0°C to room temperature at a hydrogen pressure of from 1 to 10 atm. for about 0.5 to about 10 hours. In case of using the process (ii), the employed reducing agent includes a mixture of iron, zinc, tin or tin (II) chloride with a mineral acid such as hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid, a mixture of iron, iron (II) sulfate, zinc or tin with alkali metal hydroxide such as sodium hydroxide, sulfate such as ammonium sulfate, aqueous amminia or ammonium chloride, and the like. The innert solvent includes, for example, water,

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

acetic acid, methanol, ethanol, dioxane and the like. The reaction conditions of the above reduction may vary depending on a kind of the reducing agent employed. For example, the reaction is advantageously carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to room temperature for about 0.5 to about 10 hours when the reducing agent is a combination of tin (II) chloride and hydrochloric acid. The reducing agent is usually employed in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 5 moles per 1 mole of the starting compound.

The halogenation of the compound [46] or [49] and the subsequent reaction with the compound [15] can be carried out in the same reaction conditions as employed in the halogenation of the above compound [14] and the subsequent reaction with the compound [15].

The desulfurization of the compound [55] or [51] for preparing the compound [56] or [52] respectively can be carried out in the same reaction conditions as employed in the desulfurization of the above compound [18].

The reaction of converting the compound [46] or [56] into the compound [47] or [53] respectively is carried out by reacting the starting compound with nitrite of metal such as sodium nitrite or potassium nitrite in a solvent such as water in the presence of an acid to give a diazonium salt, which is then heated at from around 150°C to around 200°C, or heated at from room temperature to around 150°C in

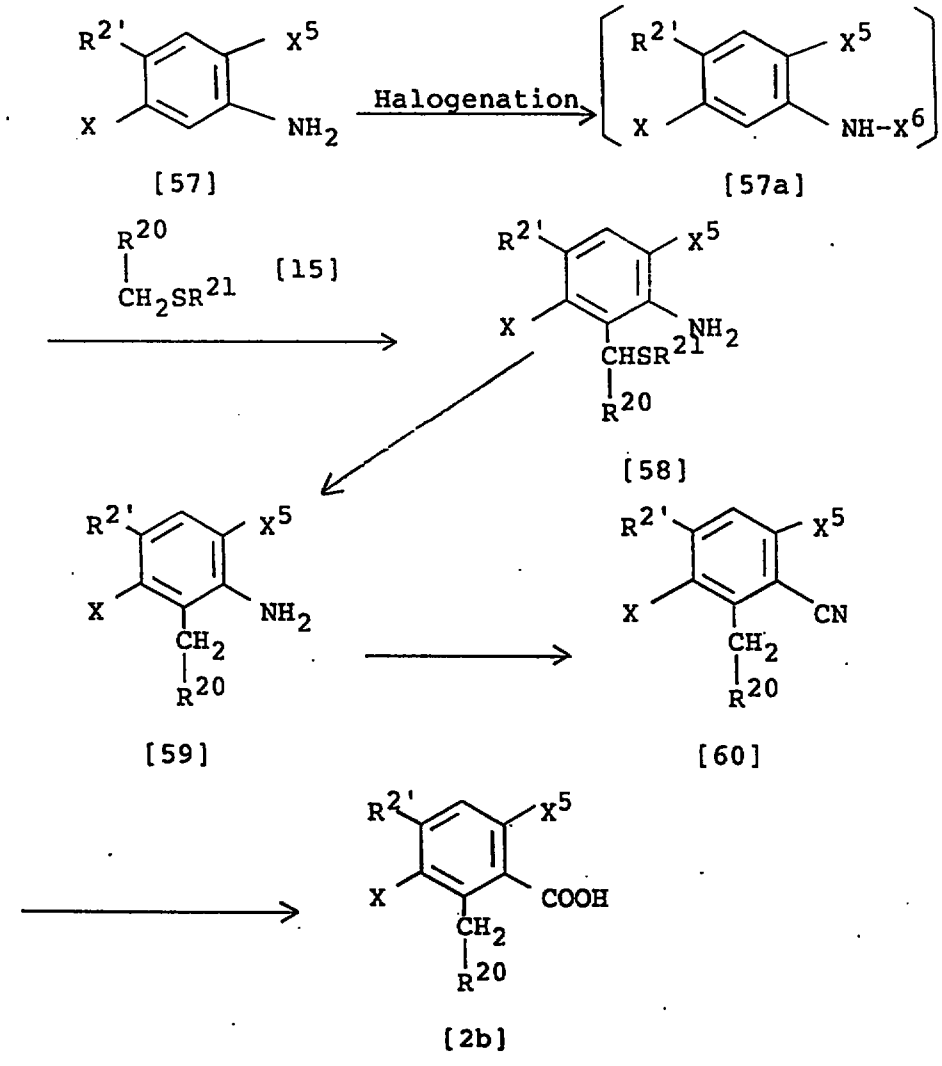
REPLACEMENT SHEET

the presence of copper (I) bromide - hydrobromic acid, copper (I) chloride - hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, potassium iodide, or an acid such as hydrochloric acid plus copper powder. The acid employed in the reaction includes, for example, hydrochloric acid, hydrobromic acid, sulfuric acid, tetrafluoroboric acid, hexafluorophosphoric acid, and the like. The acid and the nitrate of metal are usually used in an amount of from 1 to 5 moles, preferably from 1 to 3 moles, and of at least 1 mole, preferably from 1 to 1.5, moles, respectively, per 1 mole of the compound [46] or [56]. The amount of the acid employed in heating the obtained diazonium salt is usually at least 1 moles, preferably from 1 to 1.5 moles per 1 mole of the compound [56].

The deamination of the compound [52] to prepare the compound [53] is carried out by, for example, reacting the compound [52] with t-butyl nitrite in the presence of a suitable solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, dimethyl formamide, dimethyl sulfoxide, hexamethylphosphoric acid triamide, and the like. The t-butyl nitrite is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably from 1 to 2 moles per 1 mole of the compound [52]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C for about 0.1 to 5 hours.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

[Reaction scheme-XIV]



wherein $R^{2'}$, X, X^5, X^6, R^{20} and R^{21} are as defined above.

The reaction between the compound [57] and the halogenating agent and the subsequent reaction with the compound [15] are carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction between the above compound [14] and the halogenating agent and the subsequent reaction with the compound [15].

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

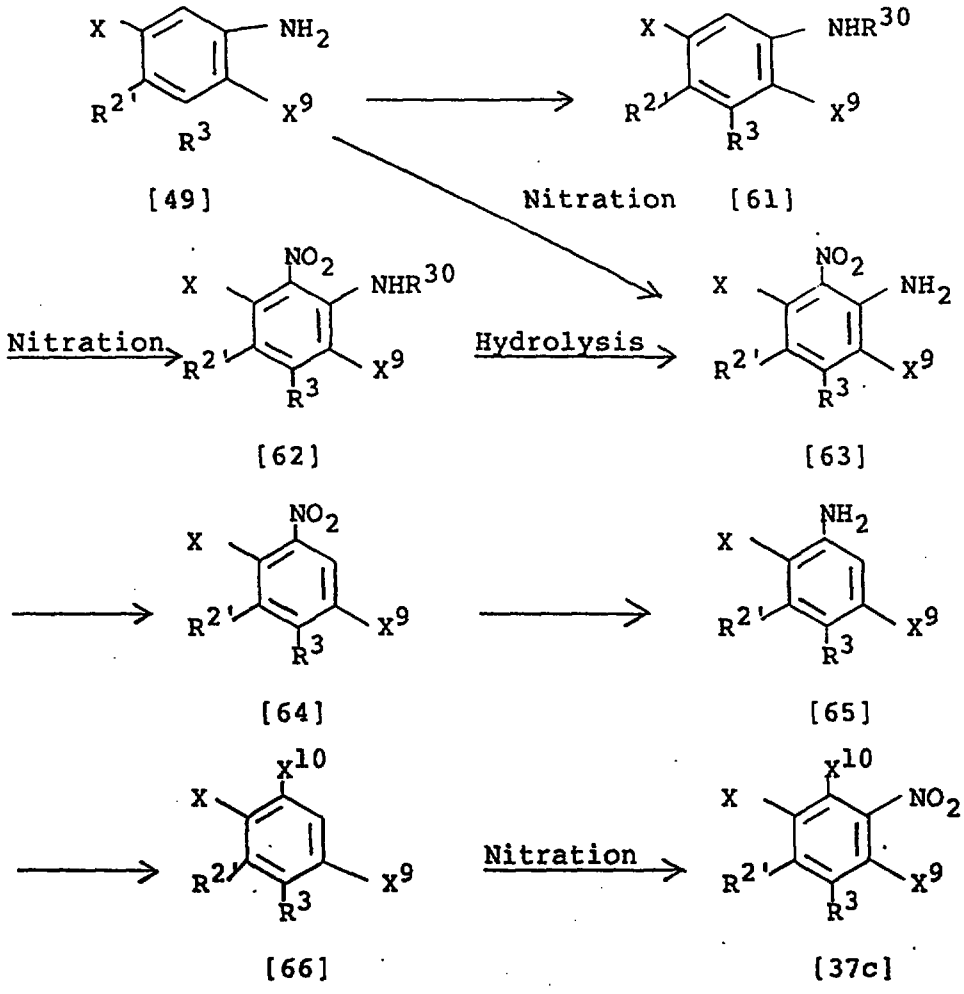
The desulfurization of the compound [58] to prepare the compound [59] is carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the desulfurization of the compound [18].

The reaction of converting the compound [59] into the compound [60] is carried out by treating the former compound under the same reacion conditions as employed in the reaction of converting the compound [46] or [56] into the diazonium salt to prepare diazonium salt, which is then reacted with MCN, wherein M is as defined above, in the presence of a copper compound such as copper powder or copper sulfate. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around 100°C, preferably from around 0°C to around 70°C for about 0.5 to about 5 hours. The MCN is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 10 moles per 1 mole of the compound [59].

The hydrolysis of the compound [60] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the above compound [20].

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

[Reaction scheme-XV]



wherein $R^{2'}$, R^3, X, X^9, and R^{30} are as defined above and X^{10} is a halogen atom.

The reaction of converting the compound [49] into the compound [61] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reaction of converting the compound [33] into the compound [34].

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

The nitration of the compound [49], [61] or [66] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above nitration of the compoud [33] or [34].

The hydrolysis of the compound [62] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above hydrolysis of the compound [1a].

The deamination of the compound [63] to prepare the compound [64] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above deamination of the compound [52].

The reduction of the compound [64] can be carried out in the same reacion conditions as employed in the above reduction of the compound [45] or [48].

The reaction of converting the compound [65] into the compound [66] can be carried out in the same manner as in the above reaction of converting the compound [46] or [56] into the compound [47] or [53].

The compounds [3], [5], [7], [9], [1a], [1a'], [1b'], [29], [31] and [32], wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having a substituent of oxo, can be reduced to the corresponding compounds, wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having a substituent of hydroxy. The reduction can be carried out with a hydrogenating reducing agent in the presence of a suitable solvent. The reducing agent includes, for example, sodium

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

borohydride, lithium aluminum hydride, diborane and the like. The reducing agent is usually used in an amount of at least 1 mole, preferably 1 to 5 moles per 1 mole of the starting material to be reduced. The solvent includes, for example, water, a (lower) alcohol such as methanol, ethanol or isopropanol, an ether such as tetrahydrofuran, diethyl ether or diglyme, and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around -60°C to 50°C, preferably from around -30°C to room temperature for about 10 minutes to about 5 hours. In case of using lithium aluminum hydride or diborane as the reducing agent, non-aqueous solvent is preferably employed such as diethyl ether, tetrahydrofuran or diglyme.

In case of using sodium borohydride as the reducing agent, an inorganic base such as sodium hydroxide can also be added to the reaction system.

The compounds wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having a substituent selected from the group consisiting of a (lower) alkyl having at least 1 of a (lower) alkanoylamino and a (lower) alkoxycarbonylamino, a (lower) alkanoylamino and a (lower) alkoxycarbonylamino can be hydrolized into the corresponding compounds wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having a subsitituent selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl having at least one amino and amino. The hydrolysis

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the hydrolysis of the compound [1a] in the above reaction scheme-I.

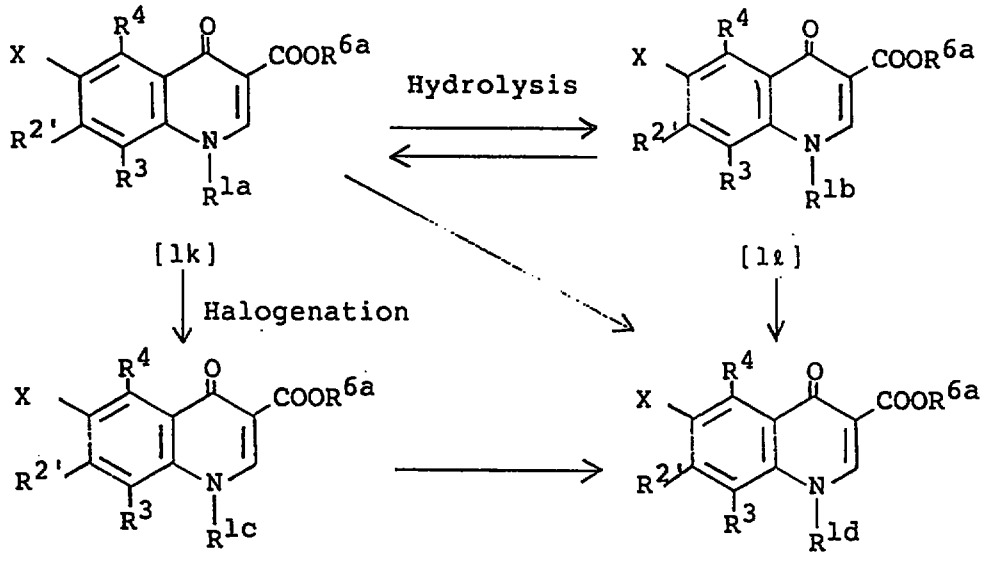
The compounds wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring having at least one -NH- in the ring can be converted into the compounds wherein R^2 is a saturated or unsaturated 5- to 9-membered heterocyclic ring substituted by at least one (lower) alkanoyl, by reacting the former compounds under the same reaction conditions as employed in the reaction of converting the compound [33] into the compound [34] in the above reaction scheme-X.

The compounds [3], [5], [7], [9], [1a], [1a'], [1b], [1b'], [29], [31] and [32] wherein R^1 is a phenyl having at least one (lower) alkoxy on the phenyl ring can be converted into the corresponding compounds wherein R^1 is a phenyl having at least one hydroxy on the phenyl ring, by heating the former compounds in an aqueous hydrobromic acid solution.

The compound [1] wherein R^3 and/or R^4 is a halogen atom can be converted into the corresponding compound [1] wherein R^3 and/or R^4 is hydroxy, by treating the former compound in water and a basic compound such as sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide or barium hydroxide at from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C for about 1 to 15 hours.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV

[Reaction scheme-XVI]



[1k] [1ℓ] [1m] [1n]

wherein $R^{2'}$, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined above, and R^{6a} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^{1a} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of hydroxy, R^{1b} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of a (lower) alkanoyloxy, R^{1c} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 of halogen atoms and R^{1d} is a (lower) alkenyl.

The reaction of converting the compound [1k] into the compound [1ℓ] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reaction of converting the compound [33] into the compound [34].

The hydrolysis of the compound [1ℓ] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above hydrolysis of the compound [1a].

The halogenation of the compound [1k] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above halogenation of the compound [2].

REPLACEMENT SH
10 NOV

The reaction of converting the compound [1k] into the compound [1n] is carried out in a suitable solvent or without a solvent in the presence of a hydrohalogenic acid such as hydochloric acid or hydrobromic acid, an inorganic acid such as sulfuric acid, boric acid or potassium hydrogensulfate, or an organic acid such as oxalic acid. The solvent employed in the reaction includes, for example, water, an ether such as dioxane, tetrahydrofuran or diethyl ether, a halogenated hydrocarbon such as dichloromethane, chloroform or carbon tetrachloride, an aromatic hydrocarbon such as benzene, toluene or xylene, or a mixture thereof. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 50°C to around 350°C, preferably from around 80°C to around 300°C for about 10 minutes to about 10 hours.

The reaction of converting the compound [1ℓ] into the compound [1n] is carried out in a suitable solvent or without a solvent. The solvent employed in the reaction may be any which is exemplified in the above reaction of converting the compound [1k] into the compound [1n]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 150°C, preferably from room temperature to around 100°C for about 10 minutes to about 10 hours. The reaction may also be conducted in the presence of an inorganic base such as sodium carbonate, potassium carbonate, sodium hydrogen carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, lithium

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

salt such as lithium chloride or lithium carbonate, or an organic base such as DBU, pyridine, triethanol amine or triethyl amine.

The reaction of converting the compound [1m] into the compound [1n] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a basic compound. The solvent and the basic compound employed in the reaction may be any which is exemplified in the above reaction of converting the compound [1ℓ] into the compound [1n]. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from room temperature to around 200°C, preferably from room temperature to around 150°C for about 1 to about 10 hours.

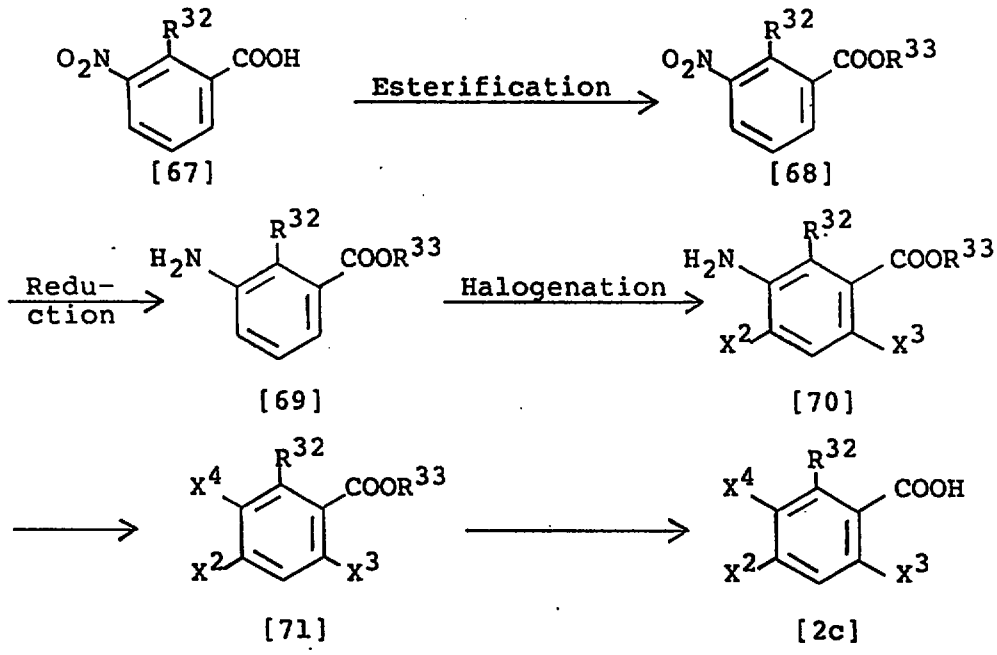
The compounds [1k], [1ℓ], [1m] and [1n] wherein R^{6a} is a (lower) alkyl can be converted into the corresponding compounds wherein R^{6a} is hydrogen atom, by hydrolyzing the former compounds under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above hydrolysis of the compound [1a].

In the hydrolysis of the compound [1ℓ] wherein R^{6a} is a (lower) alkyl, R^{6a} is also hydolyzed in some cases to give the compound [1ℓ] wherein R^{6a} is hydrogen atom, which can easily be separated from the reaction mixture.

In the halogeanation of the compound [1k] wherein R^{6a} is hydrogen atom, the carboxy in the compound is also halogenated in some cases but this one can be easily separated from the reaction mixture.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

[Reaction scheme-XVII]



Wherein X^2, X^3 and X^4 are as defined above, R^{32} and R^{33} each are a (lower) alkyl.

The esterification of the compound [67] is carried out in a (lower) alcohol such as methanol, ethanol or isopropanol in the presence of a halogenating agent such as an acid such as hydrochloric acid or sulfuric acid, thionyl chloride, phosphorus oxychloride, phosphorus pentachloride or phosphorus trichloride. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to 150°C, preferably from around 50°C to around 100°C for about 1 to 10 hours.

The reduction of the compound [68] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reduction of the compound [45] or [48].

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

The halogenation of the compound [69] is carried out in a suitable solvent in the presence of a halogenating agent. The halogenating agent employed in the reaction includes a halogen such as bromine or chlorine, iodine chloride, sulufuryl chloride, N-halogenosuccinimide such as N-bromosuccinimide or N-chlorosuccinimide. The halogenating agent is usually used in an amount of from 1 to 10 moles, preferably from 1 to 5 moles per 1 mole of the compound [69]. The solvent includes a halogenated hydrocarbon such as dichloromethane, dichloroethane, chloroform or carbon tetrachloride, a (lower) alkanoic acid such as acetic acid or propionic acid, water and the like. The reaction is usually carried out at a temperature of from around 0°C to around the boiling point of the solvent, preferably from around 0°C to around 40°C for about 0.1 to about 10 hours.

The reaction of converting the compound [70] into the compound [71] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above reaction of converting the compound [46] or [56] into the compoud [47] or [53].

The hydrolysis of the compound [71] can be carried out under the same reaction conditions as employed in the above hydrolysis of the compound [1a].

The compounds [1a] in the reaction scheme-I and the compounds [1b] and [1b'] in the reaction scheme-II are useful not only as an intermediate for preparing the compound [1] of the present invention with antimicrobial

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

activities, but also as an antimicrobial agent because they also have antimicrobial activities.

The compound [1] of the present invention can easily be converted into a salt thereof by treaing with a pharmaceutically acceptable acid or base. The acid includes inorganic acids such as hydrochloric acid, sulfuric acid, phosphoric acid and hydrobromic acid and organic acids such as oxalic acid, maleic acid, fumaric acid, malic acid, tartaric acid, citric acid, benzoic acid, lactic acid, methanesulfonic acid and propionic acid. The base includes sodium hydroxide, potassium hydroxide, calcium hydroxide, sodium carbonate, potassium hydrogen carbonate, and the like.

The compound thus obtained can easily be isolated and purified by conventional methods, such as, for example, extraction with solvents, dilution method, recrystallization, column chromatography and preparative thin layer chromatography.

The compound [1] of the present invention or salts thereof show an excellent antimicrobial activity against mycoplasma, Pseudomonas aeruginosa, anaerobic bacteria, resistant cells against various antimicrobials, clinically isolated bacteria, and gram negative and gram positive bacteria such as Enterococcus faecalis and Staphylococcus pyogenes and hence are useful as an antimicrobial agent for the treatment of diseases induced by these microorganisms.

REPLACEMENT S
18 NOV 1996

These compounds also show low toxicity and less side effect and are characteristic in good absorbability and in sustained activity. Moreover, the compounds are highly excreted via urine and hence are useful for the treatment of urinary infectious diseases, and further because of easy excretion via bile, they are also useful for the treatment of intestinal infectious diseases.

Among the compounds [1] of the present invention, the preferable ones are the compounds wherein R^1 is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, X is chlorine or fluorine atom, most preferably fluorine atom, R^4 is a (lower) alkyl such as, preferably methyl or ethyl, most preferably methyl, and R^3 is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom, most preferably hydrogen atom, with a (lower) alkyl being preferably methyl or ethyl, most preferably methyl, and a halogen atom being preferably chlorine atom or fluorine atom, most preferably fluorine atom.

The absorbability of the compounds of the present invention in the living body can be increased by converting them into the corresponding salt such as, for example, lactate or hydrochloride.

The compounds of the present invention are usually used in the form of a usual pharmaceutical preparation. The pharmaceutical preparation can be prepared in admixture with conventional pharmaceutically acceptable diluents or carriers, such as fillers, bulking agents, binding agents,

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

wetting agents, disintegrators, surfactants and lubricating agents. The pharmaceutical preparation includes various preparations suitable for treatment of the diseases, for example, tablets, pills, powders, solutions, suspensions, emulsions, granules, capsules, suppositories, injections such as solutions and suspensions, and the like. In the preparation of tablets, there may be used any conventional carriers, for example, excepients such as lactose, white sugar, sodium chloride, glucose, urea, starches, calcium carbonate, kaolin, crystalline cellulose and silicate, binding agents such as water, ethanol, propanol, simple syrup, glucose solution, starch solution, gelatin solution, carboxymethyl celiulose, shellac, methyl cellulose, potassium phosphate and polyvinylpyrrolidone, disintegrators such as dry starch, sodium alginate, agar powder, laminaran powder, sodium hydrogen carbonate, calcium carbonate, polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters, sodium laurylsulfate, stearic monoglyceride, starches and lactose, disintegration inhibitors such as white sugar, stearin, cacao butter and hydrogenated oils, absorption promoters such as quaternary ammonium salts and sodium laurylsulfate, wetting agents such as glycerin and starches, adsorbents such as starches, lactose, kaolin, bentonite and colloidal silicates, rublicants such as purified talc, stearates, boric acid powder and polyethylene glycol, and the like. The tablets may also be coated with conventional coating

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

agents, for example, may be in the form of a sugar coated tablet, a gelatin-coated tablets, an enteric coating tablet, a film coating tablet, or a double or multiple layers tablet. In the preparation of pills, there may be used conventional carries, including excipients such as glucose, lactose, starches, cacao butter, hydrogenated vegetable oils, kaolin and talc, binding agents such as gum arabic powder, tragacanth powder, gelatin and ethanol, disintegrators such as laminaran and agar, and the like. In the preparation of suppositories, there may be used conventional carriers, such as, for example, polyethylene glycol, cacao butter, higher alcohols, higher alcohol esters, gelatin and semi-synthetized glycerides. In the preparation of injections, the solutions, emulsions or suspensions of the compounds are sterilized and are preferably made isotonic with the body liquid. These solutions, emulsions and suspensions are prepared by admixing the active compound with a conventional diluent, such as water, aqueous lactic acid solution, ethyl alcohol, propylene glycol, ethoxylated isostearyl alcohol, polyoxylated isostearyl alcohol or polyoxyethylene sorbitan fatty acid esters. The preparations may also be incorporated with sodium chloride, glucose or glycerin in an amount sufficient to make them isotonic with the body liquid. The preparations may also be incorported with conventional solubilizers, buffering agents, anesthetizing

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

agents, and further, with coloring agents, preservatives, perfumes, flavors, sweetening agents, and other medicaments. The preparations in the form of a paste, cream or gel may be prepared by using as a diluent white vaseline, paraffin, glycerin, cellulose derivatives, polyethylene glycol, silicone, bentonite, or the like. When the compound of the active ingredient precipitates in the injection, an acid such as, for example, methanesulfonic acid, propionic acid, hydrochloric acid, succinic acid or lactic acid may be added to the injection as required to preserve the injection in a stable solution.

The pharmaceutical preparation of the present invention may also be in the form of an infusable or injectable solution containing the above compound [1] or a salt thereof such as lactate and an acid not producing a precipitate. The acid not producing a precipitate includes, for example, lactic acid, methanesulfonic acid, propionic acid, hydrochloric acid, succinic acid, and the like, preferably lactic acid. In case of using lactic acid, the acid is usually used in an amount of from around 0.1 to around 10% by weight, preferably from arond 0.5 to around 2% by weight, based on the weight of the above infusable or injectable solution. In case of using an acid other than lactic acid, the acid is usually used in an amount of from around 0.05 to around 4% by weight, preferably from around 0.3 to around 2% by weight, based on the weight of the above

REPLACEMENT PAGE

solution. The above infusable or injectable solution may optionally be added with conventional additives, which includes, for example, a thickener, an absorption promoter or inhibitor, a crystallization inhibitor, a complex-forming agent, an antioxidant, an isotonicity-giving agent, or a hydrating agent, and the like. The pH of the solution can properly be adjusted by adding an alkali such as sodium hydroxide, and is usually adjusted within the range of from 2.5 to 7. The infusable or injectable solution thus prepared has an excellent stability, and can be stored and preserved for a long time with retaining the solution state.

The active compounds [1] or salts thereof may be contained in any amount in the preparations, and are usually contained in an amount of from 1 to 70 % by weight based on the whole weight of the preparations.

The pharmaceutical preparations of the present invention can be administered in any methods. Suitable method for administration may be selected in accordance with the preparation form, age and sex of patients, severity of the diseases, and the like. For instance, tablets, pills, solutions, suspensions, emulsions, granules and capsules are administered in oral route. In case of injection, it is administered intravenously in a single form or together with an auxiliary liquid such as glucose or amino acid solution. The injections may also be administered in intramuscular, intracutaneous, subcutaneous, or intra-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

peritoneal route. Suppositories are administered in intra-rectal route.

The dosage of the pharmaceutical preparations of the present invention may vary according to administration methods, age and sex of patients, severity of the diseases, and the like, usually in the range of about 0.2 to about 100 mg of the active compound [1] or a salt thereof per 1 kg body weight of the patient per day. The preparation is usually administered by dividing into 2 to 4 times per day.

The present invention is illustrated by the following Reference Examples, Examples, Experiments and Preparations. It is to be understood that the present invention is not limited to these Examples or Experiments and various changes and modifications can be made without departing from the scope and spirit of the present invention.

Reference Example 1

To 2,6-dichlorotoluene (200 g) is added dropwise fuming nitric acid (d=1.52, 206 ml) at 25° to 30°C. After stirring for 30 minutes at room temperature, the mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with an aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate solution and then dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,6-dichloro-3-nitrotoluene as yellow crystals (253.2 g).

REPLACEMENT SHEET
19 NOV 1986

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.57 (3H, s), 7.42 (1H, d, J=7 Hz), 7.58 (1H, d, J=7 Hz)

Reference Example 2

A mixture of 2,6-dichloro-3-nitrotoluene (253.2 g), anhydrous dimethyl sulfoxide (1.2 ℓ), Kurocat F (KF) (357 g) and 18-crown-6 (2.5 g) is stirred at 160°C for 6 hours. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is distilled under reduced pressure to give 2,6-difluoro-3-nitrotoluene (96.1 g), boiling point: 110-112°C/18 mmHg.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.30 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 7.01 (1H, ddd, J=1.8 Hz, 7.7 Hz, 9.5 Hz), 7.97 (1H, dt, J=5.8 Hz, 8.7 Hz)

Reference Example 3

To acetic acid (1.2 ℓ) are added 5 % Pd-C (24 g) and 2,6-difluoro-3-nitrotoluene (238.7 g) and the mixture is subjected to catalytic reduction at room temperature under 4.5 atoms. The 5 % Pd-C is filtered off and the acetic acid is distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue is poured into ice-water, neutralized, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is distilled under reduced pressure to give 2,4-difluoro-3-methylaniline (138 g), colorless oils, b.p.: 75°C/11 mmHg.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.17 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 3.3-3.7(2H, brs), 6.4-6.7 (2H, m)

Reference Example 4

To 2,4-difluoro-3-methylaniline (20 g) are added 42 % tetrafluoroboric acid (56 ml) and water (28 ml) under ice cooling and thereto a solution of sodium nitrite (10 g) in water (20 ml) is added dropwise at below 10°C. After dropwise addition, the mixture is stirred at 0°C for 15 minutes and the formed crystals are filtered, which is washed with a mixture of ethanol - diethyl ether (1:2), then with diethyl ether, followed by drying under reduced pressure to give 2,4-difluoro-3-methylbenzene diazonium tetrafluoroborate (28.95 g), m.p. 114-115°C.

Reference Example 5

2,4-Difluoro-3-methylbenzene diazonium tetrafluoroborate (28.95 g) is heated at 180°C, whereby the decomposition starts. The inner temperature is raised to 200°C. The product is taken out of the reaction system. After the reaction is completed, distillates (7.05 g) are obtained, which is distilled under normal pressure to give 2,3,6-trifluorotoluene (7.02 g), as colorless oil, b.p. 92°C.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.22 (3H, t, J=1.8 Hz), 6.7-7.1 (2H, m)

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Reference Example 6

To 2,3,6-trifluorotoluene (55 g) is added conc. sulfuric acid (366 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C. Thereto a solution of potassium nitrate (44 g) in conc. sulfuric acid (120 ml) is added dropwise at below 10°C and then the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. The mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-5-nitrotoluene (68.25 g), as yellow oil.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.36 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 7.83 (1H, q-like, J=8.2 Hz)

Reference Example 7

To acetic acid (350 ml) are added 5 % Pd-C (3.5 g) and 2,3,6-trifluoro-5-nitrotoluene (35 g) and the mixture is subjected to catalytic reduction at room temperature under atomospheric pressure. 5 % Pd-C is filtered off and the acetic acid is distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue is poured into ice-water, neutralized, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the obtained residue is distilled under reduced pressure to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methylaniline (22.86 g), as yellow crystals, b.p. 85°C/20 mmHg.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.19 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 3.3-3.7 (2H, brs), 6.42 (1H, dt, J=8 Hz, 11 Hz)

REPLACEMENT SHEET

Reference Example 8

To anhydrous dichloromethane (170 ml) are added 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methylaniline (16.89 g) and dimethyl sulfide (11 ml). Thereto N-chlorosuccinimide (17.2 g) is added gradually below 5°C. After stirring for 30 minutes, triethylamine (21 ml) is added dropwise and the mixture is refluxed over night. After the mixture is cooled and made alkaline with 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, the resultant is extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 1) to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-methylthiomethylaniline (8.3 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.02 (3H, s), 2.20 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 3.79 (2H, d, J=1.9 Hz), 3.9-4.1 (2H, brs)

Reference Example 9

To 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-methylthiomethylaniline (10.67 g) are added ethanol (300 ml) and Raney nickel (100 g, wet) and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes. After Raney nickel is filtered off, the filtrate is concentrated, diluted with water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 1)

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3,6-dimethylaniline (5.89 g), as yellow crystals.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.10 (3H, d, J=1.7 Hz), 2.18 (3H, s-like), 3.4-3.7 (2H, brs)

Reference Example 10

A solution of t-butyl nitrite (4.56 g) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (26.5 ml) is stirred with heating at 50-52°C and thereto a solution of 2,4,5-trifluoro-3,6-dimethylaniline (4.24 g) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (40 ml) is added dropwise at 50-52°C over a period of 30 minutes. The mixture is further stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water, and then with diluted hydrochloric acid and dried. The diethyl ether is distilled off under atomospheric pressure and the residue is concentrated and distilled under atomospheric pressure to give 2,3,5-trifluoro-4-methyltoluene (1.9 g), as yellow oil, b.p. 120-125°C.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.17 (3H, s-like), 2.25 (3H, d, J=1.7 Hz), 6.62 (1H, ddd, J=2 Hz, 6.3 Hz, 8.3 Hz)

Reference Example 11

To 2,3,5-trifluoro-4-methyltoluene (1.9 g) is added conc. sulfuric acid (19 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C, to which a solution of potassium nitrate (1.71 g) in conc. sulfuric acid (4.6 ml) is added dropwise below 10°C

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. The mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 6) to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-methyl-5-nitrotoluene (1.9 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.29 (3H, t, J=1.5 Hz), 2.32 (3H, d, J=2.4 Hz)

Reference Example 12

To 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-methyl-5-nitrotoluene (1.9 g) are added 2-methoxyethanol (9.9 ml), water (1.1 ml), N-methylpiperazine (4.1 ml) and triethylamine (5.2 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 25 hours. After the reaction is completed, water is added and the resultant is extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 40 : 1) to give 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-3,6-difluoro-4-methyl-5-nitrotoluene (1.73 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.25 (6H, d, J=2.6 Hz), 2.36 (3H, s), 2.4-2.6 (4H, br), 3.0-3.3 (4H, br)

Reference Example 13

To 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-3,6-difluoro-4-methyl-5-nitrotoluene (1.73 g) are added anhydrous dimethyl

REPLACEMENT SHEET

sulfoxide (18 ml), potassium fluoride (0.53 g) and cyclopropylamine (2.2 ml) and the mixture is stirred at 100°C for 23 hours. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 40 : 1) to give 3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitro-N-cyclopropylaniline (1.65 g).

Reference Example 14

To 2,4-difluoro-3-methylaniline (5.0 g) are added anhydrous dichloromethane (100 ml) and dimethyl sulfide (3.5 ml). Thereto N-chlorosuccinimide (5.6 g) is added below 0°C and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. Thereto triethylamine (4.8 ml) is added and the mixture is refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water, made alkaline with 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 1) to give 2,4-difluoro-3-methyl-6-methyltiomethylaniline (4.9 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ ppm: 1.99 (3H, s), 2.17 (3H, t, J=1.8 Hz), 3.64 (2H, s), 3.93 (2H, brs), 6.56 (1H, dd, J=1.8 Hz, 9.4 Hz)

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Reference Example 15

To a solution of Raney nickel (50 g) in ethanol (100 ml) is added a solution of 2,4-difluoro-3-methyl-6-methylthiomethylaniline (4.79 g) in ethanol (30 ml) at room temperature with stirring, followed by stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes. The Raney nickel is filtered off and the filtrate is diluted with water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,4-difluoro-3,6-dimethylaniline (3.14 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.14 (6H, s-like), 3.3-3.6 (2H, br), 6.56 (1H, dd, J=1.5 Hz, 9.7 Hz)

Reference Example 16

To 2,4-difluoro-3,6-dimethylaniline (3.1 g) are added 42 % tetrafluoroboric acid (9 ml) and water (4.5 ml) with stirring and under ice-cooling, followed by dropwise addition of a solution of sodium nitrite (1.6 g) in water (3.2 ml) below 10°C. After stirring the mixture at 0°C for 15 minutes, the resulting crystals are filtered, washed with a mixture of ethanol-diethyl ether (1:2) and then with diethyl ether, followed by drying under reduced pressure to give 2,4-difluoro-3,6-dimethylbenzene diazonium tetrafluoroborate (1.78 g).

Reference Example 17

2,4-Difluoro-3,6-dimethylbenzene diazonium tetrafluoroborate (1.78 g) is heated at 180°C, whereby decompos-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

ition thereof starts. The inner temperature is raised to 200°C. The product is taken out of the reaction system to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-methyltoluene (0.3 g), as yellow oil, b.p. 120-125°C.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.17 (3H, s-like), 2.25 (3H, d, J=1.7 Hz), 6.62 (1H, ddd, J=2 Hz, 6.3 Hz, 8.3 Hz)

Reference Example 18

To 2,4,5-trifluoroaniline (35.0 g) are added anhydrous dichloromethane (530 ml) and dimethyl sulfide (24.6 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C. Thereto N-chlorosuccinimide (38.2 g) is gradually added below 5°C. After the mixture is stirred at the same temperature for 15 minutes, triethylamine (47.7 ml) is gradually added. After reflux for 12 hours, the resultant is made alkaline with 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is dried over sodium sulfate and concentrated. The residue is purified with column chlomatography (silica-gel, dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give 2-methylthiomethyl-3,4,6-trifluoro-aniline (22.3 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.03 (3H, s), 3.76 (2H, d, J=1.5 Hz), 4.03 (2H, brs), 6.48 (1H, dt, J=7.2 Hz, 10.1 Hz)

Reference Example 19

To 2-methylthiomethyl-3,4,6-trifluoroaniline (22.2 g) are added ethanol (400 ml) and Raney nickel (200 g) and the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes.

REPLACEMENT

After the catalyst is filtered off, the filtrate is added with water and extracted with dichloromethane. The is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoroaniline (12.3 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.13 (3H, d, J=2.1 Hz), 3.56 (2H, brs), 6.75 (1H, dt, J=7.2 Hz, 10.2 Hz)

Reference Example 20

To 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoroaniline (10.6 g) is added a mixture of conc. sulfuric acid (13.8 ml) and water (46 ml) and the mixture is cooled. Thereto an aqueous solution (20 ml) of sodium nitrite (5.5 g) is added dropwise at 0-5°C. The solution is gradually added to a mixture of copper (II) sulfate 5 hydrate (41 g), potassium cyanide (43 g), ammonium hydroxide (60 ml) and water (260 ml) at 10-30°C. The mixture is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried over sodium sulfate, concentrated and the residue is purified with column chromatography (silica-gel, dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzonitrile (4.3 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.52 (3H, d, J=2.5 Hz), 6.94 (1H, dt, J=6.2 Hz, 8.9 Hz)

Reference Example 21

To 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzonitrile (4.3 g) is added 50 % sulfuric acid (40 ml) and the mixture is heated at 150-160°C for 6 hours. After cooling, the mixture is poured into ice-water and extracted with diethyl ether. The

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

ether layer is added with water and made alkaline with 5 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution while the water layer is made acidic with conc. hydrochloric acid. The resultant is subjected to extraction with diethyl ether, and the extract is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoic acid (3.3 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.47 (3H, d, J=2.6 Hz), 6.88 (1H, dt, J=6.3 Hz, 9.5 Hz)

Reference Example 22

To 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoic acid (3.2 g) is added thiony chloride (7 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After concentrating, 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl chloride (3.3 g) is obtained.

Separately, two drops of carbon tetrachloride are added to a solution of metallic magnesium (0.4 g) in absolute ethanol (0.9 ml). When the reaction starts, a mixture of diethyl malonate (2.6 ml), absolute ethanol (1.6 ml) and anhydrous toluene (6 ml) is added dropwise below 60°C. After stirring at 60°C for 1 hour, the reaction mixture is cooled to 0°C and thereto a solution of 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl chloride prepared above in toluene (5 ml) is added dropwise. After stirring for 30 minutes, a mixture of conc. sulfuric acid (0.4 ml) and water (6 ml) is added and the mixture is extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give diethyl 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoylmalonate (5.2 g).

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Reference Example 23

To diethyl 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoylmalonate (5.1 g) are added water (20 ml) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (30 mg) and the mixture is refluxed for 2.5 hours. After cooling, the resultant is extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated to give ethyl 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoylacetate (3.3 g).

Reference Example 24

To ethyl 2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoylacetate (3.2 g) are added acetic anhydride (3.0 g) and triethoxymethane (2.7 g) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After concentrating, ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (3.5 g) is obtained.

Reference Example 25

Ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (3.5 g) is dissolved in ethanol (25 ml) and thereto cyclopropylamine (0.84 ml) is added dropwise under ice-cooling. After stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes, the mixture is concentrated and the residue is purified with column chromatography (silica-gel, dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 1) to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (2.7 g).

Reference Example 26

Ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-cyclo-

REPLACED

propylaminoacrylate (2.6 g) is dissolved in anhydrous dioxane (26 ml) and thereto 60 % sodium hydride (0.38 g) is gradully added under ice-cooling. After stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and extracted with dichloromethane. The extract is dried over magnesium sulfate and concentrated. The residue is added with diethyl ether and crystals are filtered, which are recrystalized from ethanol to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (2.0 g), m.p. 185-187°C.

Reference Example 27

To ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (1.9 g) are added 90 % acetic acid (20 ml) and conc. hydrochloric acid (5 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling, the precipitated crystals are isolated, washed with water, ethanol, and diethyl ether in this order to give 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4,-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (1.6 g), as colorless needles, m.p. 294-298°C.

^{1}H-NMR (CF_3COOD) δppm: 1.43-1.55 (2H, m), 1.65-1.81 (2H, m), 3.06 (3H, d, J=2.8 Hz), 4.08-4.20 (1H, m), 8.40 (1H, dd, J=6.8 Hz, 10.3 Hz), 9.46 (1H,s)

Reference Example 28

Employing 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoic acid (5.60 g) and thionyl chloride (9.8 ml), the procedure of

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Reference Example 22 is repeated to give 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl chloride (5.20 g), as colorless oil, b.p. 82°C/23 mmHg.

NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.35 (3H, m)

Reference Example 29

Empoying 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl chloride (5.00 g), the procedure of Reference Examlpe 22 is repeated to give diethyl 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoylmalonate (8 g), as yellow oil.

Reference Example 30

Employing diethyl 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoylmalonate (8 g) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (80 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 23 is repeated to give ethyl 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoylacetate (4.5 g), as yellow oil.

Reference Example 31

Employing ethyl 2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoylacetate (4.20 g) and ethyl orthoformate (4 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 24 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5 g).

Reference Example 32

Empoying ethyl 2-(2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5 g) and cyclopropylamine (1.0 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
16 NOV 1996

cyclopropylaminoacrylate (4.74 g), as white plates (recrystallized from petroleum ether - n-hexane), m.p. 78-79°C.

Reference Example 33

Employing ethyl 2-(2,3,4,5-tetrafluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (4.50 g) and 60 % sodium hydride (580 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 26 is repeated to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.19 g), as white needles (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane), m.p. 180-183°C.

Reference Examples 34

Employing ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.10 g) and conc. hydrochloric acid - 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (81.25 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (3.47 g), as white needles, m.p. 218-220°C.

Reference Examples 35

To 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methylaniline (1 g) is added acetic anhydride (3 ml) at room temperature with stirring and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-N-acetylaniline (1.14 g), as white crystals.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.21 (3H, s), 2.24 (3H, t, J=2.1 Hz), 7.2-7.5 (1H, brs), 8.10 (1H, dt, J=7.9 Hz, 12 Hz)

Reference Examples 36

To 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-N-acetylaniline (1.94 g) is added conc. sulfuric acid (19 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C. Thereto potassium nitrate (2 g) is added below 20°C and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes. The reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-nitro-N-acetylaniline (2.08 g), as white crystals.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.21 (3H, s), 2.34 (3H, t, J=2.2 Hz), 7.3-7.5 (1H, brs)

Reference Examples 37

To 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-nitro-N-acetyl-aniline (2.08 g) are added ethanol (30 ml) and 10 % hydrochloric acid (30 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 3 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, neutralized with potassium carbonate, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-nitroaniline (2.05 g), as brown crystals.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.29 (3H, s), 2.29 (3H, t, J=2.1 Hz), 5.5-5.9 (2H, brs)

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Reference Examples 38

To a solution of t-butyl nitrite (1.87 g) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (10.9 ml) is added dropwise a solution of 2,4,5-trifluoro-3-methyl-6-nitroaniline (2.05 g) in anhydrous dimethylformamide (16.4 ml) with stirring at 50-52°C and the mixture is stirred at the same temperature for 30 minutes. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvet is distilled off under reduced pressure and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-nitrotoluene (0.7 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.35 (3H, t, J=2.1 Hz), 7.62 (1H, ddd, J=2.6 Hz, 5.7 Hz, 8.3 Hz)

Reference Examples 39

To acetic acid (10 ml) are added Pd-C (0.1 g) and 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-nitrotoluene (0.7 g) and the mixture is subjected to catalytic reduction at room temperature under atmospheric pressure. 5 % Pd-C is filtered and the acetic acid is distilled off under reduced pressure. The residue is poured into ice-water, neutralized, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,3,5-trifluoro-4-methylailine (0.48 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.08 (3H, t, J=1.8 Hz), 3.6-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

4.0 (2H, brs), 6.26 (1H, ddd, J=2.2 Hz, 6.8 Hz, 9.0 Hz)

Reference Example 40

To conc. sulfuric acid (3 ml) is added sodium nitrite (0.3 g). The mixture is stirred at 70°C for 10 minutes and then cooled to below 40°C and thereto a solution of 2,3,5-trifluoro-4-methylaniline (0.48 g) in acetic acid (5 ml) is added dropwise below 40°C. After stirring for 30 minutes, the reaction mixture is added dropwise to a solution of copper (I) chloride (1.04 g) in conc. hydrochloric acid (10.4 ml) and the mixture is stirred at 80°C for 30 minutes and then cooled. The resultant is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; dichloromethane : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-chlorotoluene (0.22 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.20 (3H, t, J=2 Hz), 6.90 (1H, ddd, J=2.5 Hz, 5.8 Hz, 8.3 Hz)

Reference Examples 41

To 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-chlorotoluene (0.22 g) is added conc. sulfuric acid (3 ml) and the mixture is cooled to 0°C. Thereto potassium nitrate (0.18 g) is added and the mixture is stirred for 15 minutes under ice-cooling. The reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with a saturated

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

aqueous solution of sodium hydrogen carbonate, then with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure to give 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-chloro-5-nitrotoluene (0.17 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.33 (3H, t, J=2.2 Hz)

Reference Examples 42

To 2,3,6-trifluoro-4-chloro-5-nitrotoluene (0.17 g) are added ethanol (3.3 ml), water (0.5 ml), N-methyl-piperazine (0.45 ml) and triethylamine (0.56 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 24 hours. After the reaction is completed, water is added to the reaction mixture and the mixture is extracted with diethyl ether, and the extract is washed with water and dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and the residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; dichloromethane : methanol = 20 : 1) to give 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-3,6-difluoro-4-chloro-5-nitrotoluene (0.13 g).

To the thus obtained 2-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-3,6-difluoro-4-chloro-5-nitrotoluene (0.13 g) are added anhydrous dimethylformamide (2 ml), potassium fluoride (37 mg) and cyclopropylamine (0.15 ml) and the mixture is stirred at 100°C for 3 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water, extracted with dichloro-methane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; dichloromethane : methanol =

REPLACEMENT SHEET
13 NOV 1996

10 : 1) to give 3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-5-chloro-2-methyl-6-nitro-N-cyclopropylaniline (0.14 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.4-0.5 (2H, m), 0.6-0.8 (2H, m), 2.22 (3H, s), 2.36 (3H, s), 2.4-2.7 (4H, brs), 3.1-3.3 (4H, brs), 4.1-4.2 (1H, brs)

Reference Examples 43

Employing 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoic acid (185 mg) and thionyl chloride (600 µl), the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl chloride (183 mg).

Reference Examples 44

Employing 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl chloride (183 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give diethyl 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methyl-benzoylmalonate (320 mg), as brown oil.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.02, 1.29 and 1.38 (all 6H, each t, J=7 Hz), 2.27 (3H, d, J=1.5 Hz), 4.02, 4.21 and 4.39 (all 4H, each q, J=7 Hz), 3.36 and 13.7 (all 1H, each s)

Reference Examples 45

Employing diethyl 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoylmalonate (320 mg) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (3 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 23 is repeated to give ethyl 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoylacetate (300 mg), as brown oil.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.25 and 1.35 (all 3H, each t, J=7 Hz), 2.32 (3H, m), 4.18 and 4.29 (all 2H, each q, J=7

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Hz), 3.89, 5.25 and 12.35 (all 2H, each s)

Reference Example 46

Employing ethyl 3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoylacetate (300 mg) and ethyl orthoformate (550 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 24 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (360 mg), as brown oil.

Reference Example 47

Employing ethyl 2-(3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (360 mg) and cyclopropylamine (60 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (410 mg), as brown oil.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.90 (4H, m), 1.04 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 2.14 (3H, m), 3.01 (1H, m), 3.99 (2H, q, J=7 Hz), 8.29 (1H, d, J=14 Hz), 11.2 (1H, br)

Reference Examples 48

Employing ethyl 2-(3-chloro-2,4,5-trifluoro-6-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (410 mg) and 60 % sodium hydride (35 mg), the procedure of Reference Example 26 is repeated to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (70 mg), as pale yellow powder (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-haxane), m.p. 153-154°C.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Reference Examples 49

Employing ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7-difluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (70 mg) and conc. hydrochloric acid - 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (1 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-cyclopropyl-8-chloro-6,7-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (58 mg), as white needles, m.p. 213-215°C.

Reference Examples 50

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl chloride, b.p. 78°C/14 mmHg.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.24 (3H, t, J=7.5 Hz), 2.75 (2H, dq, J=2.3 Hz, 7.5 Hz)

Reference Examples 51

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give diethyl 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoylmalonate.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.04 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 1.19 (3H, t, J=7.4 Hz), 1.38 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.5-2.8 (2H, m), 4.03 (2H, q, J=7 Hz), 4.39 (2H, q, J=7 Hz), 13.8 (1H, s)

Reference Example 52

Employing diethyl 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoylmalonate (17.2 g) and p-toluenesulfonic acid (0.25 g), the procedure of Reference Example 23 is repeated to give ethyl 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoylacetate (11.09 g).

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Reference Example 53

Employing ethyl 2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoylacetate (8 g) and ethyl orthoformate (6.1 g), the procedure of Reference Example 24 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate.

Reference Examples 54

Employing ethyl 2-(2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate and cyclopropylamine, the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate.

Reference Examples 55

Employing ethyl 2-(2-ethyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (8.71 g) and 60 % sodium hydride (1.09 g), the procedure of Reference Example 26 is repeated to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (5 g), as white powder, m.p. 139-140°C.

Reference Example 56

Employing ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (5 g), conc. hydrochloric acid (11 ml), water (4.4 ml) and acetic acid (44 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-cyclopropyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (4.2 g), as white powder, m.p. 197-198°C.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Reference Examples 57

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (1.0 g) and p-fluoroaniline (0.39 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-(4-fluorophenyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (0.15 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(4-fluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.64 g), as white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol), m.p. 256-259°C.

Reference Examples 58

Employing ethyl 1-(4-fluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.56 g), conc. hydrochloric acid (1.5 ml), and 90 % acetic acid (6 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(4-fluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.49 g), as white crystals, m.p. 255-257°C.

Reference Examples 59

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (1.0 g) and 70 % aqueous ethylamine solution (0.24 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-ethylaminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (0.15 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.6 g), as white crystals, m.p. 157-159°C.

Reference Example 60

Empoying ethyl 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.55 g), conc. hydrochloric acid (1.5 ml) and 90 % acetic acid (6 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.40 g), as white crystals, m.p. >300°C.

^{1}H-NMR (DMSO-d_6) δppm: 1.37 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.82 (3H, d, J=3.2 Hz), 4.54 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 8.07 (1H, dd, J=7.2 Hz, 9.8 Hz), 9.00 (1H, s), 15.25 (1H, s)

Reference Example 61

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluoro-benzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (10.0 g) and ethylamine gas, the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethylaminoacrylate (9.0 g, white crystals), which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (1.30 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (6.76 g), as pale yellow needles (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane), m.p. 197-198°C.

Reference Example 62

Employing ethyl 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-caboxylate (6.51 g) and conc.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1986

hydrochloric acid : 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (100 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-ethyl-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (5.53 g), as colorless needles (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane), m.p. 203-204°C.

Reference Example 63

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5.0 g) and 2,4-difluoroaniline (2.02 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.6 g), as pale yellow prisms (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane), m.p. 156-157.5°C.

Reference Example 64

Employing ethyl 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.3 g) and conc. hydrochloric acid : 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (80 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (2.93 g), as white powder, m.p. 221-222°C.

Reference Example 65

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluoro-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

benzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (10.0 g) and 4-methoxyaniline (3.87 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoil)-3-(4-methoxyphenyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (1.56 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(4-methoxyphenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (8.27 g), as pale yellow needles, m.p. 175-176°C.

Reference Example 66

Employing ethyl 1-(4-methoxyphenyl)-5-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (4.27 g) and 47 % hydrobromic acid (50 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (2.82 g), as white powder, m.p. 287-288.5°C.

Reference Example 67

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5.0 g)and 2-aminothiophene (2.22 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2-thienyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(2-thienyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (1.05 g), as white powder (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - n-hexane), m.p. 198-200°C.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Reference Examples 68

Employing ethyl 1-(2-thienyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (1.05 g), conc. hydrochloric acid (10 ml) and 90 % acetic acid (40 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(2-thienyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.93 g), as white powder, m.p. 221-222.5°C.

Reference Example 69

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (8.38 g) and 2S-2-amino-1-propanol (2.07 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2S-3-hydroxy-2-propyl)aminoacrylate (9.72 g, yellow oil), which is then treated with potassium carbonate (4.25 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 3S-9,10-difluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylate (1.30 g), as colorless needles (recrystallized from ethanol), m.p. 216-217°C.

Reference Example 70

Employing ethyl 3S-9,10-difluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylate (1.25 g) and conc. hydrochloric acid : 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (20 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 3S (-) -9,10-difluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de] [1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylic acid (1.03

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

g), as white powder, m.p. 249-251°C (dec.).

Reference Example 71

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (7.0 g) and ethanol amine (1.33 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetraflurobenzoyl)-3-(2-hydroxyethyl)aminoacrylate. To the product are added pyridine (70 ml) and acetic anhydride (2.57 ml) and the mixture is stirred at room temperature over-night. After concentration, the resultant is diluted with water, subjected to extraction with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water and then with a saturated saline solution and dried to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2-acetyloxyethyl)aminoacrylate, which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (1.09 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(2-acetyloxyethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (6.15 g), as colorless prisms (recrystallized from ethyl acetate), m.p. 192-193°C.

Reference Example 72

Employing ethyl 1-(2-acetyloxyethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (5.80 g) and conc. hydrochloric acid : 90 % acetic acid (1:4) (100 ml), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (4.04

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

g), as pale yellow flakes (recrystallized from ethanol), m.p. 244.5-247°C.

Reference Example 73

To 1-(2-hydroxyethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (4.00 g) is added thionyl chloride (20 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After concentrating, the obtained residue is mixed with ethanol (50 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After concentrating, the resultant is extracted with dichloromethane, and the extract is washed with water, saturated sodium hydrogen carbonate, water and saturated saline solution in this order and dried. The solvent is concentrated and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; ethyl acetate : n-hexane = 1 : 20), followed by recrystllization from ethyl acetate - n-hexane to give ethyl 1-(2-chloroethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (2.00 g), as colorless prisms, m.p. 161.5-163.5°C (dec.).

Reference Example 74

To ethyl 1-(2-chloroethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-carboxylate (1.81 g) are added DBU (2.33 ml) and toluene (150 ml) and the mixture is refluxed with heating for 4 hours. After concentrating, the obtained residue is extracted with dichloroethane, and the extract is washed with dilute hydrochloric acid, water and saturated saline solution in this order and dried. The

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

solvent is concentrated and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; ethyl acetate : n-hexane = 1 : 20), followed by recrystallization from n-hexane - diethyl ether to give ethyl 1-vinyl-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.72 g), as colorless needles, m.p. 134-135.5°C.

Reference Example 75

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluoro-benzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (5.0 g), 2-chloroethylamine hydrochloride (1.74 g) and triethylamine (1.97 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,5,6-tetrafluorobenzoyl)-3-(2-chloroethyl)-aminoacrylate (5.52 g), which is then treated with 60 % sodium hydride (0.72 g) as in Reference Example 26 to give ethyl 1-(2-chloroethyl)-5-methyl-6,7,8-trifluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (3.90 g), as colorless needles (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - n-hexane), m.p. 161.5-163.5°C (dec.)

Reference Example 76

To 2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoic acid (10.0 g) is added methanol (100 ml) and thereto thionyl chloride (8 ml) is added dropwise at room temperature. After reflux for 2 hours, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and extracted with dichloromethane. The solvent is concentrated to give methyl 2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoate (10.8 g).

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 2.63 (3H, s), 3.94 (3H, s), 7.38

REPLACEMENT SHEET
16 NOV 1996

(1H, t, J=8 Hz), 7.84 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 7.99 (1H, d, J=8 Hz)

Reference Example 77

Methyl 2-methyl-3-nitrobenzoate (10.0 g) is dissolved in acetic acid (50 ml) and thereto 5 % Pd-C (1 g) is added to carry out catalytic reduction at room temperature under 1 atm. After 1.5 hours, the catalyst is filtered off. The reaction mixture is concentrated, and thereto is added water, and the mixture is made alkaline with potassium carbonate, followed by extraction with dichloromethane. The solvent is concentrated to give methyl 2-methyl-3-aminobenzoate (8.6 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.34 (3H, s), 3.55-3.85 (2H, brs), 3.87 (3H, s), 6.80 (1H, d, J=8 Hz), 7.04 (1H, t, J=8 Hz), 7.20 (1H, d, J=8 Hz)

Reference Example 78

To methyl 2-methyl-3-aminobenzoate (1.6 g) are added acetic acid (20 ml) and sodium acetate (1.6 g). Thereto a solution of bromine (3.1 g) in acetic acid (5 ml) is added dropwise below 20°C over a period of 10 minutes. After the mixture is stirred at room temperature for 30 minutes, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and the resultant is extracted with diethyl ether. The ether layer is neutralized with potassium carbonate and dried. The solvent is concentrated to give methyl 2-methyl-3-amino-4,6-dibromobenzoate (2.8 g).

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 2.14 (3H, s), 3.93 (3H, s),

4.05-4.30 (2H, brs), 7.52 (1H, s)

Reference Example 79

To methyl 2-methyl-3-amino-4,6-dibromobenzoate (1.4 g) are added ethanol (5 ml) and 42 % tetrafluoroboric acid (2.5 ml), and thereto is added dropwise a solution of sodium nitrite (0.33 g) in water (1 ml) below 5°C. After stirring the mixture for 10 minutes, the precipitated crystals are filtered and washed with a small amount of water, ethanol and diethyl ether in this order to give methyl 2-methyl-4,6-dibromo-3-benzoate diazonium tetrafluoroborate (1.6 g), m.p. 202-204°C (dec.).

Reference Example 80

Methyl 2-methyl-4,6-dibromo-3-benzoate diazonium tetrafluoroborate (1.3 g) is heated at 200°C for 10 minutes. After cooling, the reaction mixture is added with ice-water and extracted with dichloromethane. The solvent is concentrated and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (eluent; chloroform : n-hexane = 1 : 4) to give methyl 2-methyl-3-fluoro-4,6-dibromobenzoate (0.6 g).

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 2.27 (3H, d, J=2.5 Hz), 3.95 (3H, s), 7.63 (1H, d, J=5.8 Hz)

Reference Example 81

To methyl 2-methyl-3-fluoro-4,6-dibromobenzoate (75.5 g) are added ethanol (460 ml) and 10 % aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide (460 ml) and the mixture is

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

refluxed for 2 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture is diluted with water and extracted with diethyl ether. The aqueous layer is made acidic with conc. hydrochloric acid and extracted with diethyl ether. The solvent is concentrated to give 2-methyl-3-fluoro-4,6-dibromobenzoic acid (61 g), m.p. 144-146°C.

Reference Example 82

Employing 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoic acid (2.0 g), the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride (2.0 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 2.37 (3H, d, J=2.5 Hz), 7.69 (1H, d, J=5.8 Hz)

Reference Example 83

Employing diethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl chloride (2.0 g), the procedure of Reference Example 22 is repeated to give diethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoylmalonate (2.6 g).

Reference Example 84

Employing diethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoylmalonate (2.6 g), the procedure of Reference Example 23 is repeated to give ethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoylacetate (2.1 g).

Reference Example 85

Employing ethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoylacetate (2.1 g), the procedure of Reference Example

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

24 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (2.1 g).

Reference Example 86

Employing ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (69.5 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (48.1 g).

Reference Example 87

A mixture comprising ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate (45.0 g), potassium carbonate (16.7 g) and dimethylformamide (450 ml) is reacted at 140°C for 30 minutes. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and the precipitated crystals are filtered, which are recrystallized from ethanol to give ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (33.6 g), as white crystals, m.p. 195-197°C.

Reference Example 88

Employing ethyl 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (32.5 g), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (27.2 g), as white crystals, m.p. 237-239°C.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

Reference Example 89

To 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.2 g) is added thionyl chloride (2 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After cooling, the reaction mixture is poured into ice-water and made alkaline with 10 % aqueous sodium hydroxide solution. After stirring for 30 minutes, the resultant is extracted with dichloromethane. The aqueous layer is made acidic with 10 % hydrochloric acid and then extracted with dichloroethane. The solvent is concentrated and the residue is recrystallized from acetic acid to give 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (80 mg), as white crystals, m.p. 258-260°C.

Reference Example 90

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate (1.0 g) and 2,4-difluoroaniline (0.5 g), the procedure of Reference Example 25 is repeated to give ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)aminoacrylate (1.1 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.95 (3H, t, J=7.2 Hz), 2.23 (3H, d, J=2.4 Hz), 4.06 (2H, q, J=7.2 Hz), 6.70-6.83 (1H, m), 6.91-7.03 (2H, m), 7.26-7.45 (1H, m), 8.60 (1H, d, J=13.8 Hz), 11.36 (1H, d, J=13.8 Hz)

Reference Example 91

Employing ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoro-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

benzoyl)-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)aminoacrylate (1.1 g) and 60 % sodium hydride (0.13 g), the procedure of Reference Example 26 is repeated to give ethyl 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.7 g).

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.38 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 2.91 (3H, d, J=3 Hz), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.1 Hz), 6.46 (1H, dd, J=6.9 Hz, 11.1 Hz), 7.10-7.26 (2H, m), 7.38-7.56 (1H, m), 8.26 (1H, s)

Reference Example 92

Employing ethyl 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (0.7 g), the procedure of Reference Example 27 is repeated to give 1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-5-methyl-6,7-difluoro-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.5 g), colorless needles (recrystalized from acetic acid), m.p. 280-281°C.

Example 1

To 3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitro-N-cyclopropylaniline (1.65 g) is added diethyl ethoxymethylenemalonate (1.45 ml) and the mixture is heated at 150°C for 25 hours. After cooling, the reaction product is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 100 : 1) to give diethyl[N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitrophenyl]aminomethylene]malonate (1.58 g). The product is dissolved in acetic anhydride (7.9 ml) and

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

thereto conc. sulfuric acid (3.16 ml) is added dropwise at 50-60°C, followed by stirring for 30 minutes. The resultant mixture is poured into ice-water, neutralized, extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure. Purification by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 10 : 1) and recrystallization from ethanol - diethyl ether to give ethyl 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (28 mg), as yellow crystals, m.p. 146-147°C.

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 0.7-0.8 (2H, m), 1.0-1.2 (2H, m), 1.39 (3H, t, J=7 Hz), 2.39 (3H, s), 2.59 (3H ,s), 2.4-2.7 (4H, br), 2.75 (3H, d, J=2.9 Hz), 3.1-3.4 (4H, br), 3.8-4.0 (1H, m), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.1 Hz), 8.54 (1H, s)

Example 2

To ethyl 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (25 mg) are added 10 % aqueous solution of sodium hydroxide (3 ml) and ethanol (3 ml), and the mixture is refluxed for 1 hour. After cooling, the reaction mixture is diluted with water and washed with dichloromethane. After the aqueous layer is made acidic with acetic acid and then made weak alkaline with an aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate. The resultant is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure and to the residue is added diethyl

ether. The precipitated crystals are filtered and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (14 mg), as yellow crystals, m.p. 205-206°C.

^{1}H NMR ($CDCl_3$) δ: 0.7-0.9 (2H, m), 1.1-1.4 (2H, m), 2.39 (3H, s), 2.5-2.8 (4H, br), 2.63 (3H, s), 2.76 (3H, d, J=3 Hz), 3.2-3.5 (4H, br), 4.0-4.2 (1H, m), 8.85 (1H, s), 14.3-14.9 (1H, br)

Example 3

To 6,7-difluoro-1-cyclopropyl-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-difluoro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid - $B(OCOCH_3)_2$ chelate (1.24 g) are added 4-methyl-1-piperazine (1.0 g) and dimethylacetamide (6 ml), and the mixture is reacted at 50°C for 20 hours. After concentrating, the obtained residue is dissolved in acetone (20 ml) and thereto conc. hydrochloric acid (5 ml) is added, followed by stirring at room temperature for 30 minutes. The solvent is distilled off and the resultant is added with water and extracted with dichloromethane. The aqueous layer is neutralized with an aqueous sodium hydrogen carbonate and extracted with dichloromethane. After drying over magnesium sulfate, the residue is added with a mixture of diethyl ether and ethanol. The precipitated crystals are filtered and recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.1 g), as yellow crystals, m.p. 205-206°C.

Example 4

To a suspension of 6,7-difluoro-1-cyclopropyl-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (1.88 g) in N-methylpyrrolidone (5 ml) is added 4-methyl-1-piperazine (2.02 g) and the mixture is stirred at 150°C for 3 hours. After the reaction is completed, the reaction mixture is concentrated and the obtained residue is purified by silica-gel column-chromatography (dichloromethane : methanol = 3 : 1), followed by recrystallization from ethanol to give 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.05 g), as yellow crystals, m.p. 205-206°C.

Example 5

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of the above Examples 1-4 is repeated to give the following compounds.

1) 7-(1-Piprazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 185-187°C, pale yellow needles (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

2) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 183-185°C, colorless powder

3) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 96-98°C, pale yellow needles

4) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 231-233°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

5) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 229-232°C, pale yellow prisms (recrystallized from ethanol)

6) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 206-208°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - ethanol)

7) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 267-270°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

8) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 205-207°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

9) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 229-231°C, white needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

10) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-

REPLACEMENT SHEET

difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 188-189°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

11) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 213-216°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

12) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cycloprpyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 214-217°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

13) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 190-192°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from dichloromethane - n-hexane)

14) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

15) 7-(3-Amino-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

16) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5,6-difluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

17) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5,6-difluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

18) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5,6-difluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

19) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5,6-difluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

20) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

21) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 213-215°C, yellow crystals

22) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

23) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

24) 7-Morpholino-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 245-247°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

25) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (trans form), m.p. 272-275°C (dec.) white powder (recrystallized from methanol - ethyl acetate)

26) 7-(3-Aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclo-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

propyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 280-283°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from methanol - water)

27) 7-(4-Hydroxy-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 220-221°C, colorless needles (recrystallized from methanol)

28) 7-(4-Fluoro-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 204-207°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

29) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl-N-methylamino)-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 210-212°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

30) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (cis form), m.p. 239-241°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

31) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 175-177°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

32) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (cis form), m.p. 280-284°C

(dec.), pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

33) 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 236-239°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

34) 7-(1,4-Diazabicyclo[4,3,0]nonan-4-yl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 203-205°C, colorless needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

35) 7-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 261-263°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

36) 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 194-197°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

37) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (trans form), m.p. 226-229°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

38) 7-[4-(5-Methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)methyl-1-piperazinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 1.14-1.24 (2H, m), 1.26-1.41 (2H, m), 2.16 (3H, s), 2.72-2,84 (7H, m), 3.28-3.53 (7H, m),

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

7.29 (1H, d, 8.2 Hz), 8.73 (1H, s), 15.57 (1H, s)

39) 7-(4-Benzyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 165-166°C, pale yellow needles (recrystallized from diethyl ether - ethanol)

40) 7-(4-Benzyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 176-178°C, pale yellow powder

41) 7-(1,4-Diazabicyclo[4,3,0]nonan-4-yl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 194-197°C, pale yellow needles (recrystallized from dichlomethane - n-hexane)

42) 7-Morpholino-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 255-259°C, white needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

43) 7-(4-Hydroxy-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 247-250°C, white needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

44) 7-(4-Fluoro-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 259-261°C, pale yellow needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

45) 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride, m.p. 215-219°C, white

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

46) 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride, m.p. 221-223°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

47) 7-(3-Aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

48) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (cis form), m.p. 209-213°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

49) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (trans form), m.p. 214-216°C pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

50) 7-[4-(5-Methyl-2-oxo-1,3-dioxolen-4-yl)-methyl-1-piperazinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

51) 7-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 217-220°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

52) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl-N-methylamino)-1-pyrrolidinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 184-187°C,

white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

53) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonyl-N-ethylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 147-149°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

54) 7-[3-(N-t-Butoxycarbonylaminomethyl)-1-pyrrolidinyl]-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

55) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (cis form), m.p. 215-217°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

56) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (trans form), m.p. 223-224°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

57) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 194-195°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

58) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 244-246°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

59) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydroxy-4-oxoquinoline-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 228-230°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

60) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydroxy-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. >300°C, white powder

61) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. >300°C, white powder

62) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 219-220°C (dec.), colorless needles (recrystallized from ethanol)

63) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 212.5-215°C (dec.), pale yellow prisms (recrystallized from ethanol)

64) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 209.5-211°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

65) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 278-282°C (dec.), yellowish crystals (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

66) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarobonylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1986

oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 249-250°C, white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

67) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 292-295°C (dec.), pale yellowish white crystals (recrystallized from methanol - water)

68) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 225-227°C, white crystals (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

69) 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-1-pyrrolidiny)-1-ethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 230-231°C, white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

70) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-ethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 275-281°C (dec.), yellowish crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

71) Ethyl 7-(1-piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate, m.p. 181-183°C (dec.), pale yellow needles (recrystallized from chloroform - n-hexane)

72) Ethyl 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-difluoro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate, m.p. 165-166°C (dec.), pale yellow needles (recrystallized

from ethyl acetate - n-hexane)

73) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 205-206.5°C (dec.), pale yellow powder

74) 7-(4-Mehtyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 187.5-189.5°C (dec.), pale yellow needles (recrystallized from ethyl acetate - n-hexane)

75) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(4-fluoro-phenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 274-276°C (dec.), white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

76) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2-thienyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 239-240.5°C (dec.), white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

77) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 161-163°C, yellow powder (recrystallized from dimethyl-formamide)

78) 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 146-147°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide - ethanol - diethyl ether)

79) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic

RE .. ENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

acid, m.p. 201-202°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

80) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 164-165°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

81) 3S(-)-10-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-9-fluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylic acid, m.p. 235-236.5°C (dec.), colorless prisms (recrystallized from ethanol), $[\alpha]_D^{25}$ = -125.9° (C=0.21, chloroform)

82) 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 226-228°C, pale yellow crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

83) 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 229-232°C, white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol - water)

84) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 291-294°C, white crystals (recrystallized from ethanol - water)

Example 6

A mixture comprising 7-(3-t-butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (trans form) (120 mg), ethanol (4 ml) and 10 % hydrochloric acid (4 ml) is refluxed for 30 minutes. After concentrating, the obtained residue is recrystallized from methanol - ethyl acetate to give 7-(3-amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (trans form) (60 mg), as white powder, m.p. 272-275°C.

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of Example 6 is repeated to give the following compounds.

1) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (cis form), m.p. 280-284°C (dec.), pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

2) 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 236-239°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

3) 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 194-197°C, white powder (recrystallized from dimethylformamide)

4) 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride, m.p. 215-219°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

5) 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride, m.p. 221-223°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

6) 7-(3-Aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid

7) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclo-propyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (cis form), m.p. 209-213°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

8) 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidiny)-1-cyclo-propyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (trans form), m.p. 214-216°C, pale yellow powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

9) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 292-295°C (dec.), pale yellow crystals (recrystallized from methanol - water)

10) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-ethyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride, m.p. 275-281°C (dec.), yellowish crystals (recrystallized from ethanol)

11) 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-ethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, m.p. 164-165°C, white powder (recrystallized from ethanol)

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1998

Example 7

To a solution of 7-(1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (40 mg) in 5 % sodium hydroxide (2 ml) is added acetic anhydride (0.1 ml) at room temperature. After the mixture is made acidic with dilute hydrochloric acid, the resultant is extracted with dichloromethane and the extract is dried over magnesium sulfate. After concentrating, the obtained residue is recrystallized from ethanol to give 7-(4-acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (29 mg), as white powder, m.p. 261-263°C.

Starting from suitable materials, the procedures of Example 7 is repeated to give 7-(4-acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

Example 8

To a solution of 7-(4-benzyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid (150 mg) in ethanol (20 ml) is added 10 % Pd-C (50 mg) and the catalytic reduction is carried out at 70°C under atomospheric pressure. After filtering off the 10 % Pd-C, the filtrate is concentrated. The residue is recrystallized from dimethylformamide to give 7-(1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (64 mg), m.p. 185-

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

187°C, as pale yellow needles.

Starting from suitable materials, the procedure of Example 8 is repeated to give 7-(3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

Example 9

The procedures of Example 1 are repeated, via diethyl [N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(3-ethoxycarbonylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitrophenyl]-aminomethylene]malonate as an intermediate compound, to give ethyl 7-(3-ethoxycarbonylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylate.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.7-0.9 (2H, m), 1.0-1.2 (2H, m), 1.39 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 1.40 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 2.1-2.4 (2H, m), 2.50 (3H, s), 2.75 (3H, d, J=3 Hz), 3.4-3.7 (4H, m), 3.8-4.0 (1H, m), 4.1-4.5 (5H, m), 5.3-5.5 (1H, m), 8.54 (1H, s)

Example 10

The procedure of Example 1 is repeated, via diethyl [N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(4-benzyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitrophenyl]aminomethylene]malonate as an intermediate compound, to give ethyl 7-(4-benzyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate.

^{1}H-NMR ($CDCl_3$) δppm: 0.6-0.8 (2H, m), 1.0-1.2 (2H,

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

m), 1.39 (3H, t, J=7.1 Hz), 2.58 (3H, s), 2.4-2.7 (4H, br), 2.74 (3H, d, J=3.0 Hz), 3.1-3.4 (4H, br), 3.60 (2H, s), 3.8-4.0 (1H, m), 4.38 (2H, q, J=7.1 Hz), 7.3-7.4 (5H, m), 8.53 (1H, s)

Example 11

The procedure of Example 1 is repeated, via [N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(4-benzyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2,5-dimethyl-6-nitrophenyl]aminomethylene]malonate as an intermediate compound, to give ethyl 7-(4-benzyl-3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate, m.p. 128-129°C, as pale yellow powder.

Example 12

To ethyl 7-(3-ethoxycarbonylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate (130 mg) is added 5 % aqueous potassium hydroxide solution (3.2 ml) and the mixture is refluxed for 4 hours. After cooling, the reaction mixture is made acidic with acetic acid and then made weak alkaline with potassium carbonate. The resultant is extracted with dichloroethane and the extract is dried, followed by distillating the solvent under reduced pressure. To the residue is added diethyl ether and the precipitated crystals are filtered to give 7-(3-amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid (30 mg), m.p. 96-98°C, as pale yellow needles.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Example 13

The procedure of Example 1 is repeated, via diethyl [N-cyclopropyl-N-[3-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-4-fluoro-2-methyl-5-chloro-6-nitrophenyl]aminomethylene]-malonate as an intermediate compound, to give ethyl 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-chloro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylate, m.p. 175-177°C, as yellow crystals.

Example 14

To a solution of 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-bromo-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (0.58 g) in N-methyl-2-pyrrolidone (5 ml) is added 4-oxopiperidine (0.64 g) and the mixture is heated at 90°C for 20 minutes. The solvent is distilled off under reduced pressure. To the resulting residue is added ethanol and the precipitated crystals are filtered to give 1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-7-(4-oxo-1-piperidinyl)-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (230 mg).

Elementary Analysis for $C_{19}H_{19}N_2O_4F$

Calcd. (%): C, 63.68; H, 5.34; N, 7.82

Found (%): C, 63.58; H, 5.39; N, 7.72

Experiment (Antimicrobial activity in vitro)

The antimicrobial activity of the test compounds as mentioned below was tested by measuring minimum inhibitory concentration (MIC) by the serial dilution method on agar plate [cf. Chemotherapy, 22, 1126-1128 (1974)]. The

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

microorganisms were used in a concentration of 1 x 10^6 cells/ml (O.D. 660 mμ, 0.07-0.16, 100 folds dilution). The results are shown in Table 1.

[Test compounds]:

1. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

2. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

3. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

4. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

5. 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

6. 7-(3-Aminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

7. 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride (trans form)

8. 7-Morpholino-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

9. 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

10. 7-(1,4-Diazabicyclo[4,3,0]nonan-4-yl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

11. 7-(4-Hydroxy-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

12. 7-(4-Fluoro-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

13. 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (cis form)

14. 7-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

15. 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

16. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

17. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

18. 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

19. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1995

20. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

21. 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

22. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

23. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-5-chloro-6-fluoro-8-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

24. 7-(1,4-Diazabicyclo[4,3,0]nonan-4-yl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

25. 7-Morpholino-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

26. 7-(4-Hydroxy-1-piperizinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

27. 7-(4-Fluoro-1-piperidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

28. 7-(3-t-Butoxycarbonylamino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid (trans form)

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

29. 7-(3-Methylamino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride

30. 7-(3-Ethylaminomethyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride

31. 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (trans form)

32. 7-(3-Amino-4-methyl-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid monohydrochloride (cis form)

33. 7-(4-Acetyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

34. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

35. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

36. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-8-chloro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

37. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

38. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

39. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

40. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(4-hydroxyphenyl)-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

41. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-ethyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

42. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

43. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

44. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-vinyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

45. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(4-fluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

46. 3S (-)-10-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-9-fluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1,4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylic acid

47. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

48. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

49. 7-(3-Amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid hydrochloride

[Test microorganisms]:

A: Staphylococcus aureus FDA 209P

B: Staphylococcus aeruginosa E-2

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Table 1

Test compounds	Microorganisms	
	A	B
1	0.049	0.78
2	0.195	0.78
3	0.098	0.39
4	0.098	0.39
5	0.098	0.39
6	0.098	1.56
7	0.195	0.78
8	0.098	-
9	0.195	-
10	0.049	0.78
11	0.049	-
12	0.098	-
13	0.195	0.78
14	0.098	-
15	0.098	0.78
16	0.098	0.78
17	0.049	0.39
18	0.098	0.78
19	0.098	0.39
20	0.098	0.78
21	0.098	0.39

- to be continued -

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Table 1 (Continue)

Test compounds	Microorganisms	
	A	B
22	0.024	0.39
23	0.024	-
24	0.098	0.78
25	0.024	-
26	0.012	-
27	0.098	-
28	0.195	-
29	0.195	0.78
30	0.098	-
31	0.195	0.78
32	0.098	0.39
33	0.024	-
34	0.098	-
35	0.049	0.39
36	0.049	0.39
37	0.098	0.78
38	0.195	1.56
39	0.195	0.39
40	0.098	0.78
41	0.39	1.56
42	0.049	0.39

- to be continued -

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Table 1 (Continue)

Test compounds	Microorganisms	
	A	B
43	0.098	0.39
44	0.78	0.78
45	0.195	1.56
46	0.098	1.56
47	0.098	1.56
48	0.098	0.39
49	0.024	0.78

Preparation 1

An injection preparation is prepared from the following components.

Components	Amount
7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo quinoline-3-carboxylic acid	200 mg
Glucose	250 mg
Distilled water for injection	q.s.
Totally	5 ml

7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid and glucose are dissolved in distilled water for injection, and the solution is added to a 5 ml ampoule, which is purged with nitrogen gas and then subjected to sterilization at 121°C for 15 minutes to give an injection preparation.

REPLACEMENT SHEET

Preparation 2

Film coated tablets are prepared from the following components.

Components	Amount
7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo quinoline-3-carboxylic acid	100 g
Avicel (tradename of microcrystalline cellulose, manufactured by Asahi Chemical Industry Co., Ltd., Japan)	40 g
Corn starch	30 g
Magnesium stearate	2 g
TC-5 (tradename of hydroxypropyl methylcellulose, manufactured by The Shin-Etsu Chemical Co., Ltd., Japan)	10 g
Polyethylene glycol 6000	3 g
Castor oil	40 g
Ethanol	40 g

7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, Avicel, corn starch and magnesium stearate are mixed and kneaded and the mixture is tabletted using a conventional pounder (R 10 mm) for sugar coating (manufactured by Kikusui Seisakusho Co., Ltd., Japan). The tablets thus obtained are coated with a film coating agent consisting of TC-5, polyethylene glycol 6000, castor oil and ethanol to give film coated tablets.

Preparation 3

An ointment is prepared from the following components.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

Components	Amount
7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quioline-3-carboxylic acid	2 g
Purified lanolin	5 g
Bleached beeswax	5 g
White vaseline	88 g
Totally	100 g

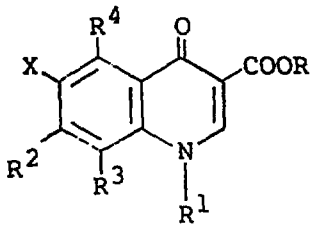
Bleached beeswax is made liquid by heating, and thereto are added 7-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5,8-dimethyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, purified lanolin and while vaseline, and the mixture is heated until it becomes liquid. The mixture is stirred until it is solidified to give an ointment.

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

What is claimed is:

1. A compound of the formula:



[1]

wherein R^1 is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a halogen atom; a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring; a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkanoyloxy or hydroxy; a (lower) alkenyl; or thienyl,

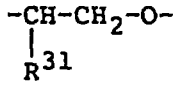
R^2 is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted,

R^3 is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl, or a halogen atom,

R^4 is a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom,

R is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl,

R^1 and R^3 may be taken together to form the group :



wherein R^{31} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and

X is a halogen atom,

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

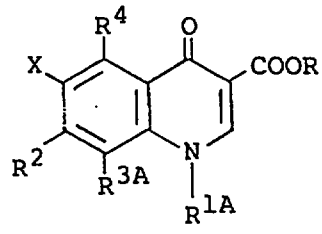
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

REPLACEMENT SHEET

provided that R^3 and R^4 are not simultaneously halogen atom, and that when R^3 is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a lower alkyl,

or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

2. The compound according to claim 1, which is a compound of the formula:



[1]

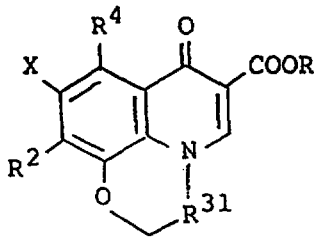
wherein R^{1A} is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a halogen atom, a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring, a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkanoyloxy or hydroxy, a (lower) alkenyl or thienyl, R^2 is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl, or a halogen atom, R^4 is a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom, R is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and X is a halogen atom, provided that R^3 and R^4 are not simultaneously halogen atom, and that when R^3 is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a lower alkyl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

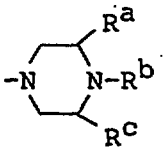
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

3. The compound according to claim 1, which is a compound of the formula:



[1]

wherein R^2 is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^4 is a (lower) alkyl or a halogen atom, R is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, R^{31} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and X is a halogen atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

4. The compound according to claim 3, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom, a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which is substituted by a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R is hydrogen atom; R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group; X is fluorine atom; and R^{31} is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is a phenyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a C_1-C_6 alkoxy group, a halogen atom

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

and hydroxy group, or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group which may by substituted by a halogen atom, a C_2-C_6 alkanoyloxy group or hydroxy group, R is hydrogen atom, and X is fluorine atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

6. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is a C_2-C_6 alkenyl group or thienyl group, R is hydrogen atom, and X is fluorine atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

7. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

8. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^4 is a halogen atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

9. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} and R^4 are each a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

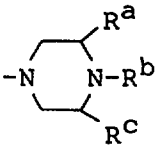
10. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperazinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)-

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

alkyl group, and a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which may be substituted by phenyl group or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

11. The compound according to claim 10, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom, a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which is substituted by a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

12. The compound according to claim 11, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

13. The compound according to claim 11, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

14. The compound according to claim 12 or claim 13, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A}

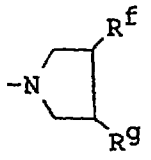
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

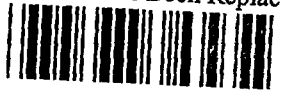
is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-pyrrolidinyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of an amino which may have 1 or 2 susbtituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, an amino-(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 to 2 substitents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, and a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

16 The compound according to claim 15, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^f is an amino which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, or an amino(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, R^g is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

17. The compound according to claim 16, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom, and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

18. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A}

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

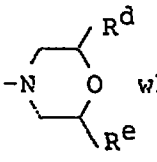


THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

* C L M S *

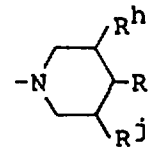
REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a morpholino group which may have 1 to 3 substituents of C_1-C_6 alkyl groups, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

19. The compound according to claim 18, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^d is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^e is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20. The compound according to claim 19, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

21. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperidinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, hydroxy, a halogen atom and oxo group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

22. The compound according to claim 21, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^h is hydrogen

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^i is hydrogen atom, hydroxy, a halogen atom or oxo group, R^j is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group; R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom; and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

23. The compound according to claim 22, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

24. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is 1,4-diazobicyclo[4.3.0]nonan-4-yl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

25. The compound according to claim 24, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

26. The compound according to claim 25, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

27. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

28. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl

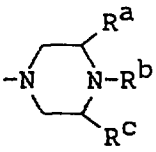
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
16 NOV

group, and R^2 is a 1-piperazinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, and a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which may substituted by phenyl or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

29. The compound according to claim 28, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom, a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which is substituted by a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

30. The compound according to claim 29, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

31. The compound according to claim 30, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

32. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl

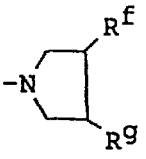
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

group, and R^2 is a 1-pyrrolidinyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of an amino which may have 1 or 2 susbtituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, an amino(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 to 2 substitents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, and a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

33 The compound according to claim 32, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^f is an amino which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, or an amino(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, R^g is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

34. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a morpholino group which may have 1 to 3 substituents of C_1-C_6 alkyl groups, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

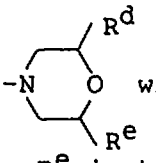
35. The compound according to claim 34, wherein R^2

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

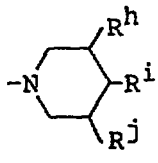
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV

is a group of the formula:  wherein R^d is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^e is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

36. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperidinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, hydroxy, a halogen atom and oxo group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

37. The compound according to claim 36, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^h is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^i is hydrogen atom, hydroxy, a halogen atom or oxo group, R^j is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group; and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

38. The compound according to claim 2, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is 1,4-diazobicyclo[4.3.0]nonan-4-yl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

39. The compound according to any one of claims 33, 35, 37 and 38, wherein R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

40. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

41. 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

42. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

43. The compound according to claim 1, which is a member selected from the group consisting of 7-(1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, 7-(3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid, 7-(3-amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid, and 3S(-)-10-(4-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-9-fluoro-3,8-dimethyl-7-oxo-7H-pyrido[1,2,3-de][1.4]benzoxazine-6-carboxylic acid.

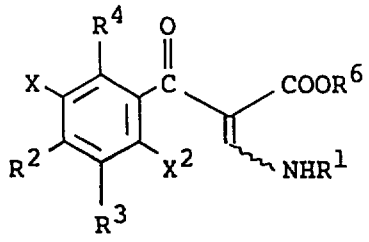
44. A process for preparing the compound as set forth in claim 1, which comprises

(a) subjecting a compound of the formula:

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

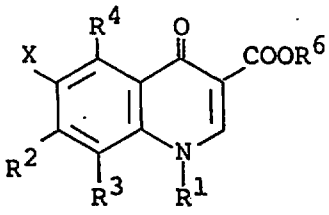
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996



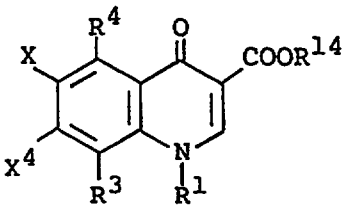
wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, X^2 is a halogen atom, and R^6 is a lower alkyl,

to cyclization reaction to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^6 is as defined above, optionally followed by hydrolysis of the above compound,

(b) reacting a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, X^4 is a halogen atom, and R^{14} is hydrogen atom or a group of the formula: $-B(OCOR^{15})(OCOR^{16})$ (wherein R^{15} and R^{16} are each an alkyl),

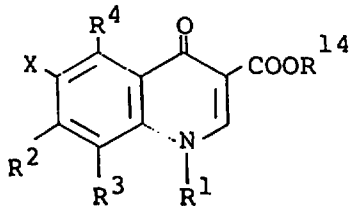
with a compound of the formula: R^2H wherein R^2 is as defined in claim 1 to give a compound of the formula:

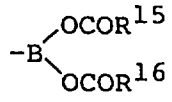
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

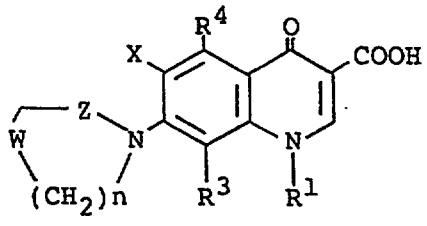
* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT
18 NOV 1996



wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{14} is as defined above, optionally followed by converting the compound where R^{14} is a group of the formula:  into a compound where R^{14} is hydrogen atom,

(c) reacting a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, either Z or W is $-CH_2-$ and the other is -NH, n is an integer of 1 to 3, with a compound of the formula:

$$R^{17}X^5$$

wherein R^{17} is a (lower) alkyl; a cycloalkyl; a phenyl (lower) alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a (lower) alkoxy, nitro or amino; a phenyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkyl or a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a pyridyl; a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, amino, a (lower) alkoxy and a halogen atom, said amino being optionally

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

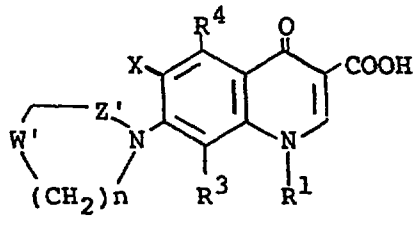
This Sheet Has Been Replaced



* C L M S *

substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a cycloalkyl or a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms; a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; a phenyl(lower)alkoxy-carbonyl; an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl-(lower)alkyl; a carboxy(lower)alkyl; an anilinocarbonyl-(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 halogen atoms; a sulfo(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkenyl or a (lower) alkynyl, and X^5 is a halogen atom,

to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, n is as defined above, and either Z' or W' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is $-NR^{17}$ (R^{17} is as defined above),

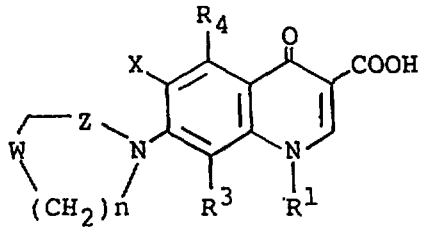
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

REPLACED
18 NOV 1996

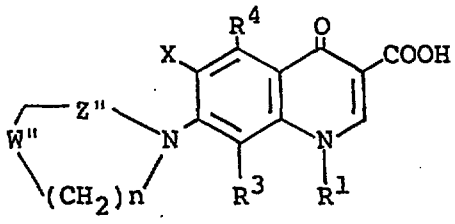
(d) reacting a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and W, Z and n are as defined above, with a compound of the formula:

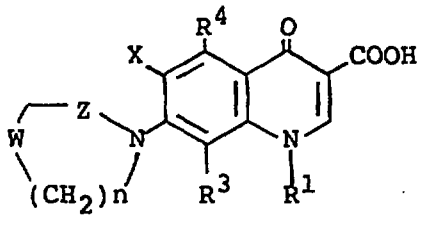
$$R^{18}COR^{19}$$

wherein R^{18} and R^{19} are each hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, n is as defined above, and either Z" or W" is $-CH_2-$ and the other is $-N-CH\begin{matrix}R^{18}\\R^{19}\end{matrix}$ (R^{18} and R^{19} are as defined above),

(e) reacting a compound of the formula:

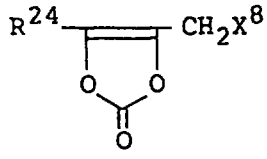


wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and W, Z and n are as defined above, with a compound of the formula:

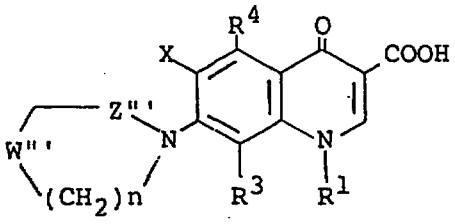
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

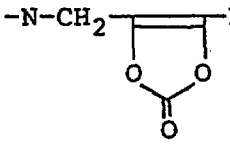
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

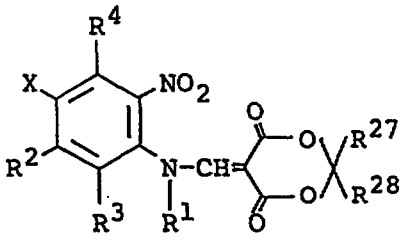


wherein R^{24} is phenyl, a lower alkyl or hydrogen atom, X^8 is a halogen atom, to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, n is as defined above, either Z"' or W"' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is a group:  (R^{24} is as defined above),

(f) subjecting a compound of the formula:



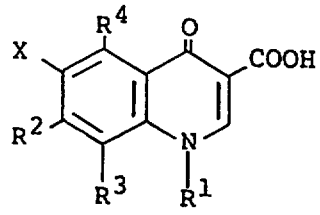
wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X is as defined in claim 1, and R^{26} and R^{27} are each a lower alkyl,

to a cyclization reaction to give a compound of the formula:

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

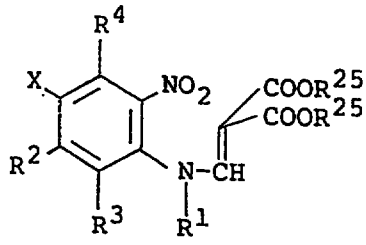
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

* C L M S *



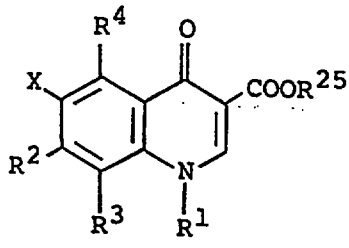
wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1,

(g) subjecting a compound of the formula:



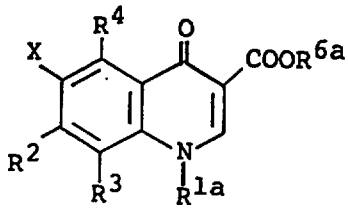
wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{25} is a lower alkyl,

to cyclization reaction to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^1, R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as derined in claim 1, and R^{24} are as defined above, optionally followed by hydrolysis thereof,

(h) reacting a compound of the formula:



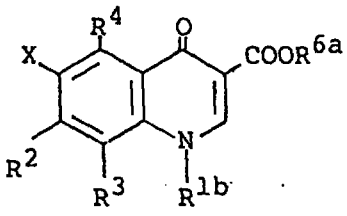
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

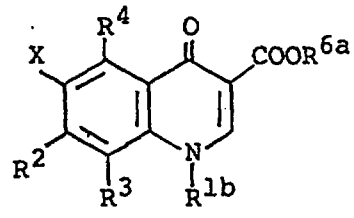
REPLACEMENT
18 NOV 1996

wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1a} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 hydroxy groups, and R^{6a} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, with a (lower) alkanoylating agent, to give a compound of the formula:



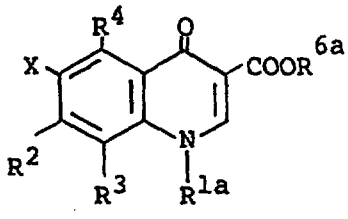
wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{6a} is as defined above, and R^{1b} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 (lower) alkanoyloxy groups,

(i) subjecting a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1b} and R^{6a} are as defined above,

to hydrolysis to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1a} and R^{6a} are as defined above,

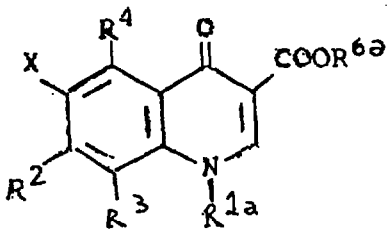
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

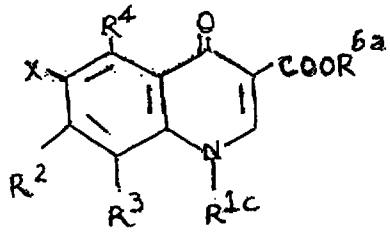
* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1994

(j) reacting a compound of the formula:

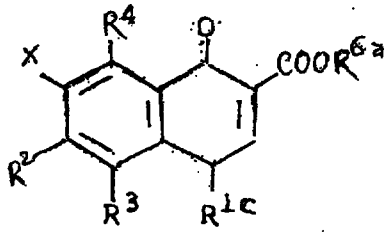


wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1a} and R^{6a} are as defined above, with a halogenating agent, to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{6a} is as defined above, and R^{1c} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 halogen atoms,

(k) treating a compound of the formula:



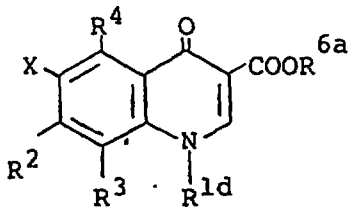
wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1c} and R^{6a} are as defined above, with a basic compound to give a compound of the formula:

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

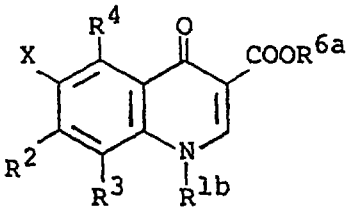
* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

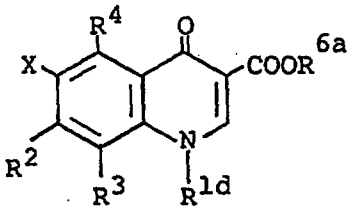


wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{6a} is as defined above, and R^{1d} is a (lower) alkenyl,

(l) converting a compound of the formula:

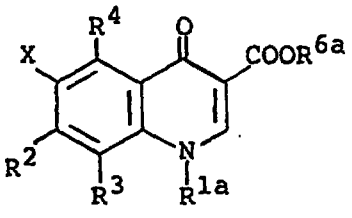


wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1b} and R^{6a} are as defined above, to a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1d} and R^{6a} are as defined above, or

(m) converting a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1a} and R^{6a} are as defined above, in the presence of an acid to

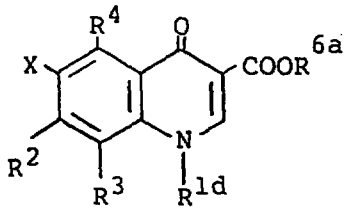
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
18 NOV 1996

a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^3, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1d} and R^{6a} are as defined above,

45. An antimicrobial composition which comprises as an essential active ingredient an effective amount of a compound as set forth in claim 1.

46. Use of the compound as set forth in claim 1 as an antimicrobial agent.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

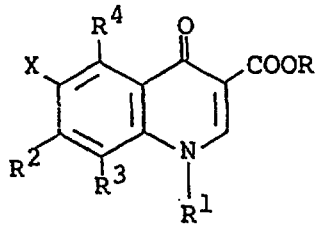
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN
REPLACED

REPLACEMENT

Abstract of the Disclosure:

BENZOHETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDSE

Novel 4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid compounds of the formula:



[1]

wherein R^1 is cyclopropyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents of alkyl and halogen; phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents of alkoxy, halogen and OH; alkyl which may be substituted by halogen, alkanoyloxy or OH; alkenyl; or thienyl, R^2 is 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^3 is H, alkyl or halogen, R^4 is alkyl or halogen, R is H or alkyl, R^1 and R^3 may be taken together to form $-\underset{\underset{R^{31}}{|}}{CH}-CH_2-O-$ wherein R^{31} is H or alkyl, and X is halogen, provided that R^3 and R^4 are not simultaneously halogen, and that when R^3 is H, R^4 is alkyl, and salts thereof, said compounds having excellent antimicrobial activity and hence being useful as an antimicrobial agent, and a pharmaceutical composition containing said compound as an active ingredient.

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced



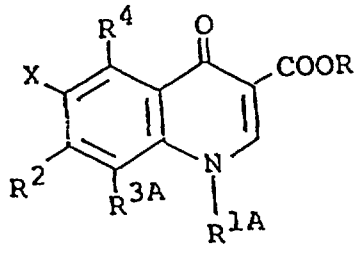
9607282-1

REPLACEMENT SHEET

15 SEP 1998

What is claimed is :

1. A compound of the formula :



[1]

wherein R^{1A} is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkyl and a halogen atom, a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a (lower) alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring, a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkanoyloxy or hydroxy, a (lower) alkenyl or thienyl, R^2 is a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, a (lower) alkyl, or a halogen atom, R^4 is a (lower) alkyl, R is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, and X is a halogen atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

2. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is a phenyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a C_1-C_6 alkoxy group, a halogen atom and hydroxy group, or a C_2-C_6 alkyl group which may by substituted by a halogen atom, a C_2-C_6 alkanoyloxy group or hydroxy group, R is hydrogen atom, and X is fluorine atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

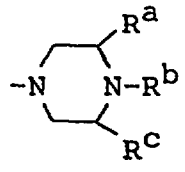
3. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is a C_2-C_6 alkenyl group or thienyl group, R is hydrogen atom, and X is fluorine atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

4. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

5. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} and R^4 are each a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

6. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperazinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)-alkyl group, and a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which may be substituted by phenyl group or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

7. The compound according to claim 6 wherein R^2 is a group of the formula :  wherein R^a is a hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom, a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which is substituted by a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

8. The compound according to claim 7, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

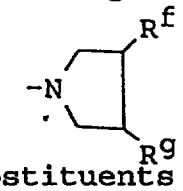
* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP

9. The compound according to claim 7, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

10. The compound according to claim 8 or claim 13, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

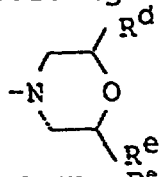
11. The compound according to claim 1 wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-pyrrolidinyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of an amino which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, an amino-(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 to 2 substitents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and (C_1-C_6)alkoxycarbonyl group on the amino moiety, and a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

12. The compound according to claim 11, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula :  wherein R^f is an amino which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, or an amino(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6) alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, R^g is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

13. The compound according to claim 12, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom, and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

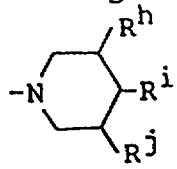
14. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a morpholino group which may have 1 to 3 substituents of C_1-C_6 alkyl groups, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

15. The compound according to claim 14, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula :  wherein R^d is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^e is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

16. The compound according to claim 15, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

17. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is halogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperidinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, hydroxy, a halogen atom and oxo group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

18. The compound according to claim 17, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula :  wherein R^h is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^i is hydrogen atom, hydroxy, a halogen atom or oxo group, R^j is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group; R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom; and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

19. The compound according to claim 18, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmceutically acceptable salt thereof.

20. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is a halogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is 1,4-diazobicyclo[4.3.0]nonan-4-yl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

21. The compound according to claim 20, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine or chlorine atom and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

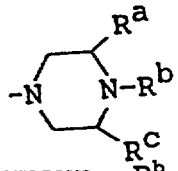
22. The compound according to claim 21, wherein R^{3A} is fluorine atom and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

23. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

24. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperazinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, and a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which may substituted by phenyl or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically accpetable salt thereof.

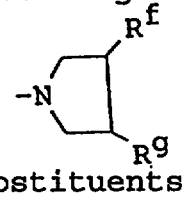
25. The compound according to claim 24, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula :  wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom, a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, a C_1-C_6 alkanoyl group, a phenyl(C_1-C_6)alkyl group, or a 2-oxo-1,3-dioxolenemethyl group which is substituted by a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

26. The compound according to claim 25, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is methyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

27. The compound according to claim 26, wherein R^a is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^b is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^c is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

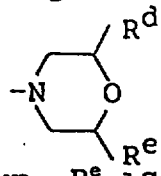
REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

28. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, and R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-pyrrolidinyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of an amino which may have 1 or 2 susbtituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, an amino(C_1-C_6) alkyl group which may have 1 to 2 substitents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, and a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

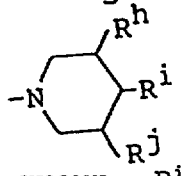
29. The compound according to claim 28, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula:  wherein R^f is an amino which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6)alkoxy-carbonyl group, or an amino(C_1-C_6)alkyl group which may have 1 or 2 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group and a (C_1-C_6) alkoxy-carbonyl group on the amino moiety, R^g is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

30. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a morpholino group which may have 1 to 3 substituents of C_1-C_6 alkyl groups, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

31. The compound according to claim 30, wherein R^2 is a group for the formula :  wherein R^d is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^e is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharma-ceutically acceptable salt thereof.

32. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is a 1-piperidinyl group which may have 1 to 3 substituents selected from a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, hydroxy, a halogen atom and oxo group, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

33. The compound according to claim 32, wherein R^2 is a group of the formula :  wherein R^h is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, R^i is hydrogen atom, hydroxy, a halogen atom or oxo group, R^j is hydrogen atom or a C_1-C_6 alkyl group; and R^4 is methyl or ethyl group, or a pharma-ceutically acceptable salt thereof.

34. The compound according to claim 1, wherein R^{1A} is unsubstituted cyclopropyl, R is hydrogen atom, X is fluorine atom, R^{3A} is hydrogen atom, R^4 is a C_1-C_6 alkyl group, and R^2 is 1,4-diazobicyclo[4.3.0]nonan-4-yl, or a pharmaceutically acceptable salt thereof.

35. The compound according to any one of claims 29, 31, 33 and 34, wherein R^4 is methyl group, or a pharma-ceutical acceptable salt thereof.

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

36. 7-(1-Piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

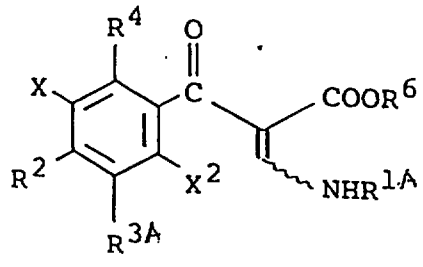
37. 7-(3-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

38. 7-(4-Methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6-fluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

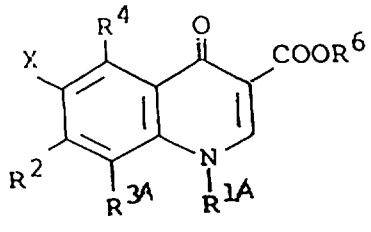
39. The compound according to claim 1, which is a member selected from the group consisting of 7-(1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, 7-(3-methyl-1-piperazinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid, and 7-(3-amino-1-pyrrolidinyl)-1-cyclopropyl-6,8-difluoro-5-methyl-1,4-dihydro-4-oxo-quinoline-3-carboxylic acid.

40. A process for preparing the compound as set forth in claim 1, which comprises

(a) subjecting a compound of the formula:



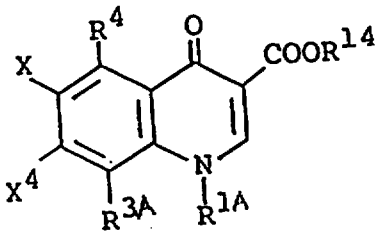
wherein R^{1A}, R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, X^2 is a halogen atom, and R^6 is a lower alkyl, to cyclization reaction to give a compound of the formula :



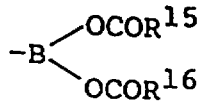
REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

wherein R^{1A}, R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^6 is as defined above, optionally followed by hydrolysis of the above compound,

(b) reacting a compound of the formula :

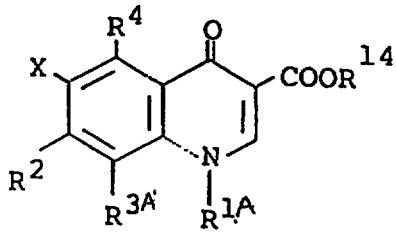


wherein R^{1A}, R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, X^4 is a halogen atom, and R^{14} is hydrogen atom or a group of the formula :

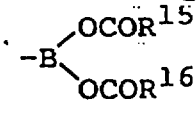


(wherein R^{15} and R^{16} are each an alkyl)

with a compound of the formula: R^2H wherein R^2 is as defined in claim 1 to give a compound of the formula :

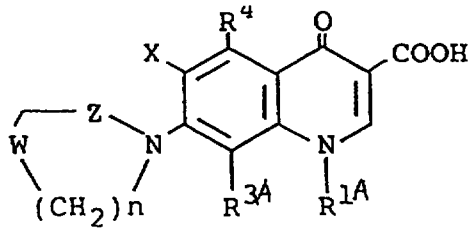


wherein R^{1A}, R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{14} is as defined above, optionally followed by converting the compound where R^{14} is a group of the formula .



into a compound where R^{14} is hydrogen atom,

(c) reacting a compound of the formula :

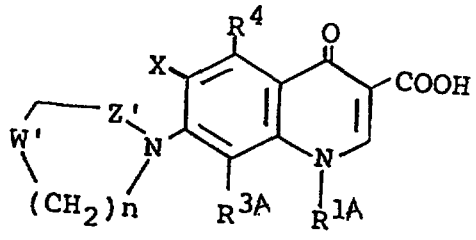


wherein R^{1A}, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, either Z or W is $-CH_2-$ and the other is -NH, n is an integer of 1 to 3, with a compound of the formula :

$R^{17}X^5$

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

wherein R^{17} is a (lower) alkyl; a cycloalkyl; a phenyl (lower) alkyl in which phenyl ring may be substituted by a (lower) alkoxy, nitro or amino; a phenyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a (lower) alkyl or a (lower) alkyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of halogen atoms; a pyridyl; a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, amino, a (lower) alkoxy and a halogen atom, said amino being optionally substituted by a (lower) alkyl, a (lower) alkanoyl, a cycloalkyl or a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkanoyl which may be substituted by 1 to 7 of halogen atoms; a (lower) alkenylcarbonyl having 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of a halogen atom and a carboxy; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl; an aminocarbonyl which may be substituted by a (lower) alkyl; a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; an amino(lower)alkanoyl which may be substituted by a phenyl(lower)alkoxycarbonyl; a (lower) alkoxycarbonyl(lower)alkyl; a carboxy(lower)alkyl; an anilinorcarbonyl(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkylsulfonyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 halogen atoms; a sulfo(lower)alkyl; a (lower) alkenyl or a (lower) alkynyl, and X^5 is a halogen atom,
to give a compound of the formula:

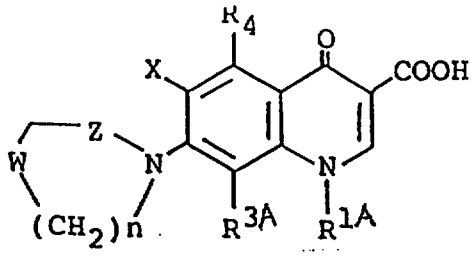


wherein R^{1A}, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, n is as defined above, and either Z' or W' is $-CH_2-$ and the other is $-NR^{17}$ (R^{17} is as defined above),

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

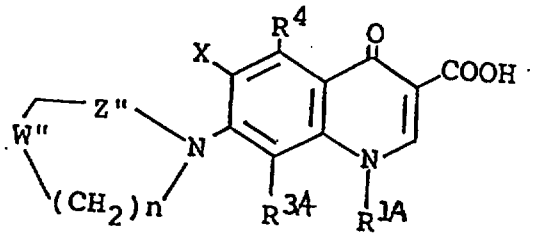
(d) reacting a compound of the formula:



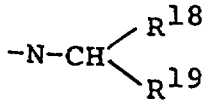
wherein R^{1A}, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and W, Z and n are as defined above, with a compound of the formula:

$$R^{18}COR^{19}$$

wherein R^{18} and R^{19} are each hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl, to give a compound of the formula:

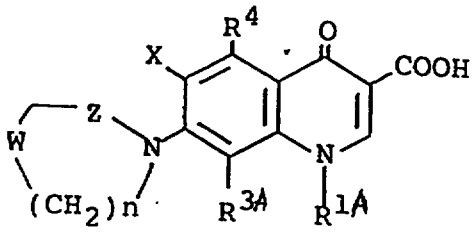


wherein R^{1A}, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, n is as defined above, and either Z" or W" is $-CH_2-$ and the other is

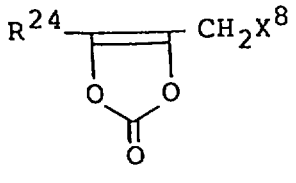


(R^{18} and R^{19} are as defined above),

(e) reacting a compound of the formula:

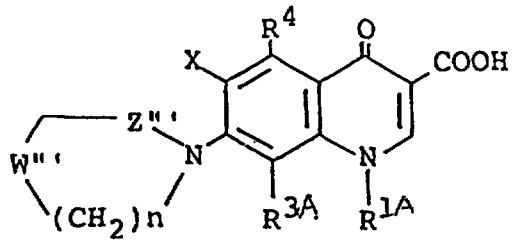


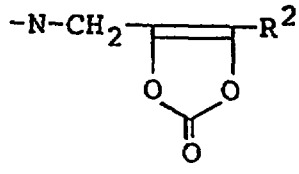
wherein R^{1A}, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and W, Z and n are as defined above, with a compound of the formula:



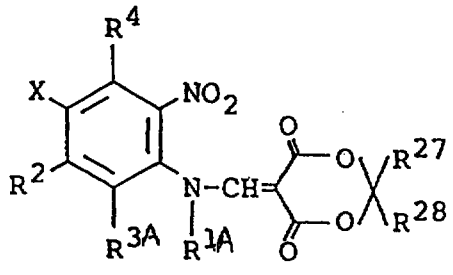
REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

wherein R^{24} is phenyl, a lower alkyl or hydrogen atom, X^8 is a halogen atom, to give a compound of the formula :

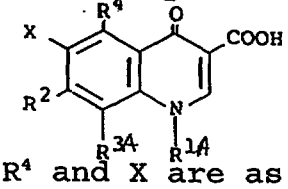


wherein R^{1A}, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, n is as defined above, either Z" or W" is $-CH_2-$ and the other is a group:  (R^{24} is as defined above),

(f) subjecting a compound of the formula:

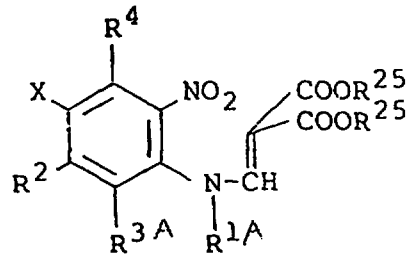


wherein R^{1A}, R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{26} and R^{27} are each a lower alkyl,
to a cyclization reaction to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^{1A}, R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1,

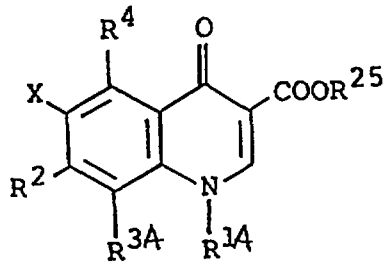
(g) subjecting a compound of the formula:



* C L M S *

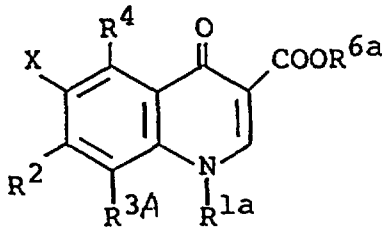
REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

wherein R^{1A}, R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{25} is a lower alkyl,
to cyclization reaction to give a compound of the formula:

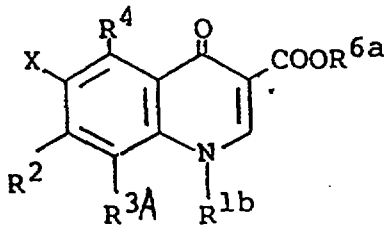


wherein R^{1A}, R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{24} are as defined above, optionally followed by hydrolysis thereof,

(h) reacting a compound of the formula:

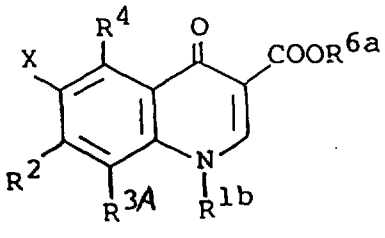


wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1a} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 hydroxy groups, and R^{6a} is hydrogen atom or a (lower) alkyl, with a (lower) alkanoylating agent, to give a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{6a} is as defined above, and R^{1b} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 (lower) alkanoyloxy groups,

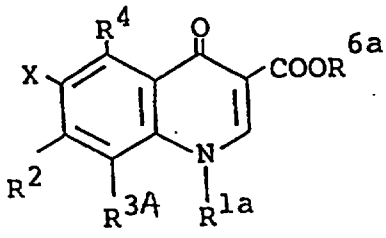
(i) subjecting a compound of the formula :



* C L M S *

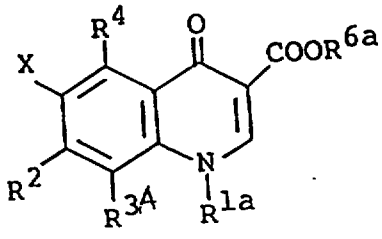
REPLACEMENT SHEET

wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1b} and R^{6a} are as defined above,
to hydrolysis to give a compound of the formula :

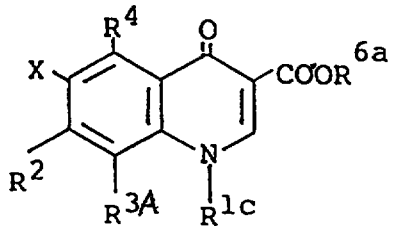


wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1a} and R^{6a} are as defined above,

(j) reacting a compound of the formula:

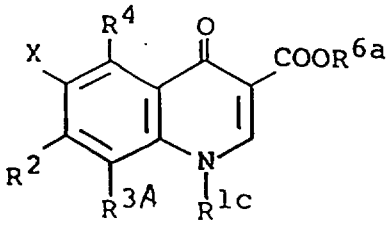


wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1a} and R^{6a} are as defined above, with a halogenating agent, to give a compound of the formula:



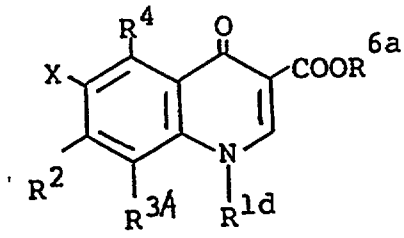
wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{6a} is as defined above, and R^{1c} is a (lower) alkyl having 1 to 3 halogen atoms,

(k) treating a compound of the formula:



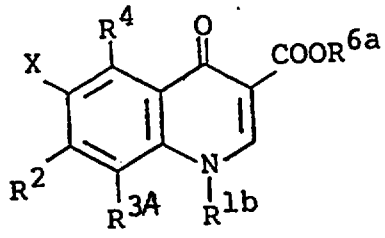
REPLACEMENT
15 SEP 1998

wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1c} and R^{6a} are as defined above, with a basis compound to give a compound of the formula:

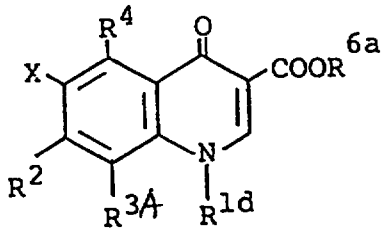


wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{6a} is as defined above, and R^{1d} is a (lower) alkenyl,

(l) converting a compound of the formula:

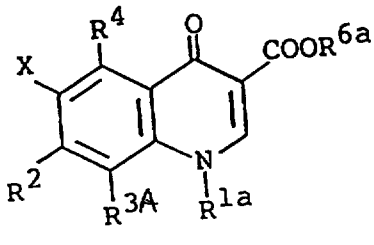


wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1b} and R^{6a} are as defined above, to a compound of the formula:



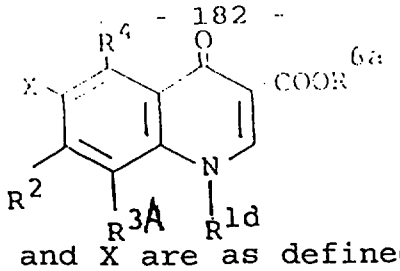
wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, R^{1d} and R^{6a} are as defined above, or

(m) converting a compound of the formula:



wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1a} and R^{6a} are as defined above, in the presence of an acid to a compound of the formula:

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

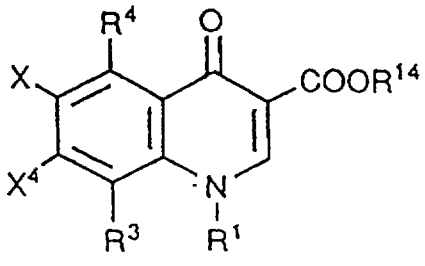


wherein R^2, R^{3A}, R^4 and X are as defined in claim 1, and R^{1d} and R^{6a} are as defined above.

41. An antimicrobial composition which comprises as an essential active ingredient an effective amount of a compound as set forth in claim 1.

42. Use of the compound as set forth in claim 1 as an antimicrobial agent.

43. A compound of the formula:



[1b]

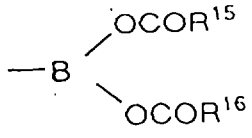
wherein

R^1 is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkyl and a halogen atom; a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy, on a phenyl ring; a lower alkyl which may e substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkanoyloxy or hydroxy; a lower alkenyl; or thienyl.

R^3 is hydrogen atom, a C_1-C_6 alkyl, or a halogen atom,

R^4 is a lower alkyl,

R^{14} is hydrogen atom or a group of the formula:



* C L M S *

REPLACED

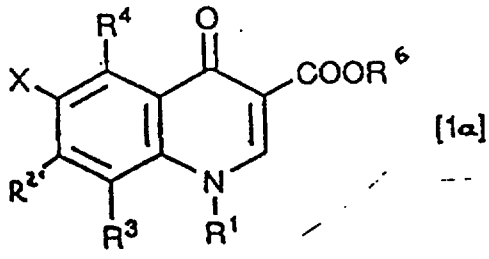
(wherein R^{15} and R^{16} are each a lower alkyl),

X is a halogen atom,

X^4 is a halogen atom,

or salt thereof.

44. A compound of the formula:



[1a]

wherein

R^1 is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkyl and a halogen atom; a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring; a lower alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkanoyloxy or hydroxy; a lower alkenyl; or thienyl, R^3 is hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl, or a halogen atom.

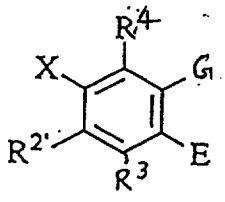
R^4 is a lower alkyl,

R^6 is a lower alkyl,

X is a halogen atom,

$R^{2'}$ is a halogen atom

45. A compound of the formula:



wherein X is a halogen atom, and $R^{2'}$, R^3, R^4, G and E are selected from the group consisting of the following (a) to (e):

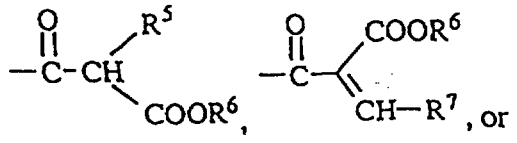
This Sheet Has Been Replaced

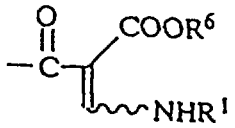
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

* C L M S *

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

(a) R^3 is a hydrogen atom; R^4 is a lower alkyl group; $R^{2'}$ is a halogen atom or a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic group which may be substituted; G is a group of the formula:





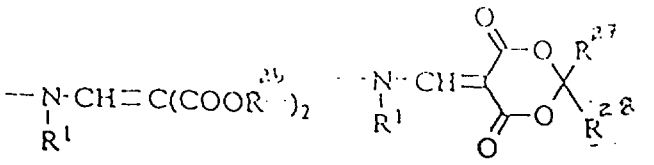
;E is a halogen atom, wherein R^5 is a group of the formula: $-COR^{10}$ (R^{10} is a lower alkyl group) or a group of the formula: $-COOR^{11}$ (R^{11} is a lower alkyl group), R^6 is a lower alkyl group, R^7 is a group of the formula: $-NR^{12}R^{13}$ (R^{12} and R^{13} are each a lower alkyl group) or a lower alkoxy group, R^1 is a cyclopropyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkyl group and a halogen atom, a phenyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkoxy group, a halogen atom and a hydroxy group on phenyl ring, a lower alkyl group which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkanoyloxy group or a hydroxy group, a lower alkenyl group, or a thienyl group:

(b) R^3 is a hydrogen atom, R^4 is a lower alkyl group; $R^{2'}$ is a halogen atom or a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic group which may be substituted; G is a nitro group; E is a halogen atom, a group of the formula: $-NH-R^1$,

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

REPLACEMENT
15 SEP 1998



or an amino group, wherein R^1 is a cyclopropyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkyl group and a halogen atom, a phenyl group which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkoxy group, a halogen atom and a hydroxy group on phenyl ring, a lower alkyl grop which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkanoyloxy group or a hydroxy group, a lower alkenyl group, or a thienyl group, R^{25}, R^{27}, R^{28} are each a lower alkyl group:

(c) R^3 is a hydrogen atom, R^4 is a lower alkyl group; $R^{2'}$ is a halogen atom; G is a carboxyl group and E is a halogen atom:

(d) R^3 is a hydrogen atom, R^4 is a group of the formula: $-CH_2R^{20}$ (R^{20} is a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group), $R^{2'}$ is a halogen atom or a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be substituted; G is a hydrogen atom or a nitro group and E is a halogen atom; or

(e) R^3 is a hydrogen atom, R^4 is a group of the formula: $-CH_2R^{20}$ or $-CH(R^{20})SR^{21}$ (R^{20} is a hydrogen atom or a lower alkyl group, and R^{21} is a lower alkyl group); $R^{2'}$ is a halogen atom or a 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic group which may be substituted; G is an amino group and E is a halogoen atom.

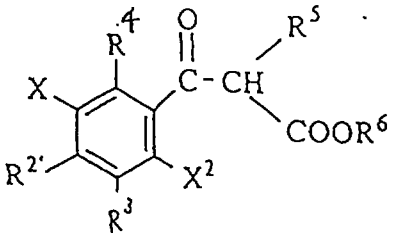
THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

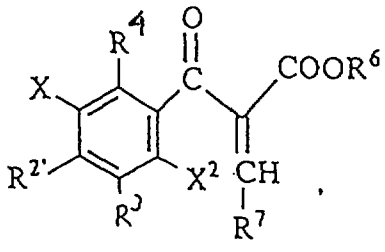
* C L M S *

REPL... T
15 SEP 1998

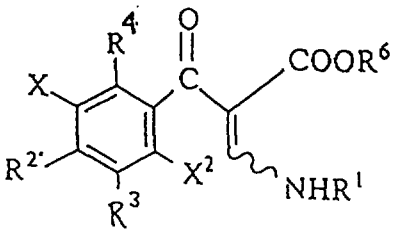
46. A compound according to claim 45, which is a member selected from the group consisting of the compounds of the following formulae:



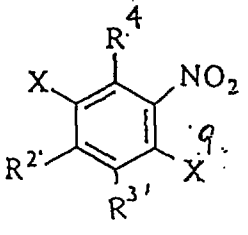
,



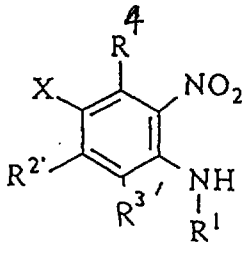
,



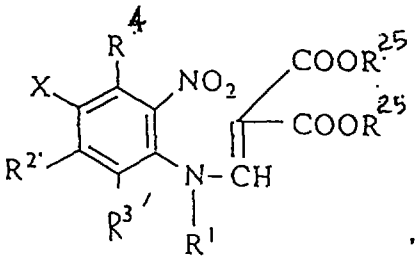
,



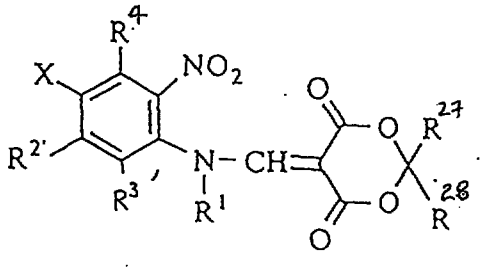
,



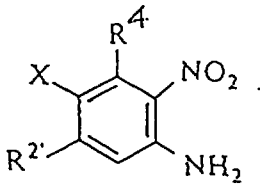
,



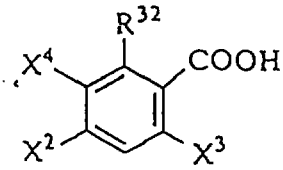
,



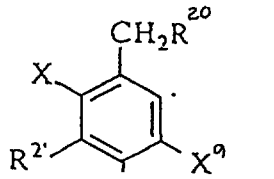
,



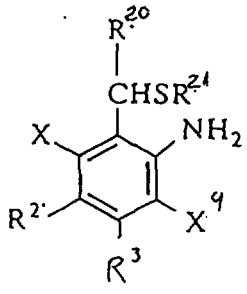
,



,



and



THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

REPLACEMENT SHEET
15 SEP 1998

wherein X, R^1, $R^{2'}$, R^3, R^5, R^6, R^7, R^{25}, R^{27}, R^{28}, R^{20} and R^{21} are the same as defined in claim 1, X^2, X^3, X^4 and X^9 are each a halogen atom, R^{31} is a hydorgen atom, and R^{32} is a lower alkyl group.

47. A compound according to claim 45, which is a member selected from the group consisting of

2-methylthiomethyl-3,4,6-trifluoroaniline;
2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluoroaniline;
2-methyl-3,4,6-thifluorobenzolic acid
diethyl 2-methyl-3,4,6-tirfluorobenzoylmalonate;
ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate;
ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate;
2-methyl-3-fluoro-4,6-dibromobenzoic acid;
diethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoylmalonate;
ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methybenyxol)-3-ethoxyacrylate;
ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropyl-aminoacrylate; and
ethyl 2-(2-methyl-3,4,6-trifluorobenzoyl)-3-(2,4-difluorophenyl)-aminoacrylate.

48. The compound according to claim 45, which is 2-methyl-3-fluoro-4,6-dibromobenzoic acid

49. The compound according to claim 45, which is diethyl 4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenoylmalonate.

50. The compound according to claim 45, which is ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-ethoxyacrylate.

51. The compound according to claim 45, which is ethyl 2-(4,6-dibromo-3-fluoro-2-methylbenzoyl)-3-cyclopropylaminoacrylate.

THIS SHEET HAS BEEN REPLACED

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

9607292-1

REPLACEMENT SHEET
06 JAN 1999

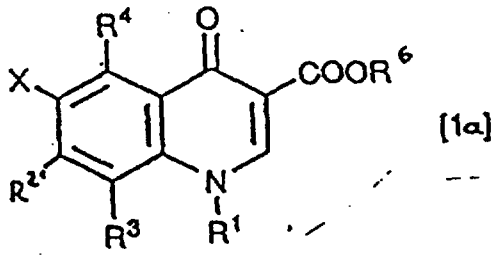
(wherein R^{15} and R^{16} are each a lower alkyl),

X is a halogen atom,

X^4 is a halogen atom,

or salt thereof.

44. A compound of the formula:



[1a]

wherein

R^1 is a cyclopropyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkyl and a halogen atom; a phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 of substituents selected from the group consisting of a lower alkoxy, a halogen atom and hydroxy on phenyl ring; a lower alkyl which may be substituted by a halogen atom, a lower alkanoyloxy or hydroxy; a lower alkenyl; or thienyl, R^3 is hydrogen atom, a lower alkyl, or a halogen atom.

R^4 is a lower alkyl,

R^6 is a lower alkyl,

X is a halogen atom,

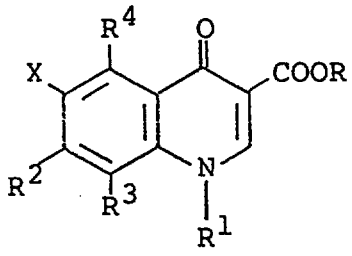
$R^{2'}$ is a halogen atom

REPLACE
06 JAN 1989

Abstract of the Disclosure:

BENZOHETEROCYCLIC COMPOUNDSE

Novel 4-oxoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid compounds of the formula:



[1]

wherein R^1 is cyclopropyl which may have 1 to 3 substituents of alkyl and halogen; phenyl which may be substituted by 1 to 3 substituents of alkoxy, halogen and OH; alkyl which may be substituted by halogen, alkanoyloxy or OH; alkenyl; or thienyl, R^2 is 5- to 9-membered saturated or unsaturated heterocyclic ring which may be sustituted, R^3 is H, alkyl or halogen, R^4 is alkyl or halogen, R is H or alkyl, R^1 and R^3 may be taken together to form $-\underset{\underset{R^{31}}{|}}{CH}-CH_2-O-$ wherein R^{31} is H or alkyl, and X is halogen, provided that R^3 and R^4 are not simultaneously halogen, and that when R^3 is H, R^4 is alkyl, and salts thereof, said compounds having excellent antimicrobial activity and hence being useful as an antimicrobial agent, and a pharmaceutical composition containing said compound as an active ingredient.

This Sheet Has Been Replaced

